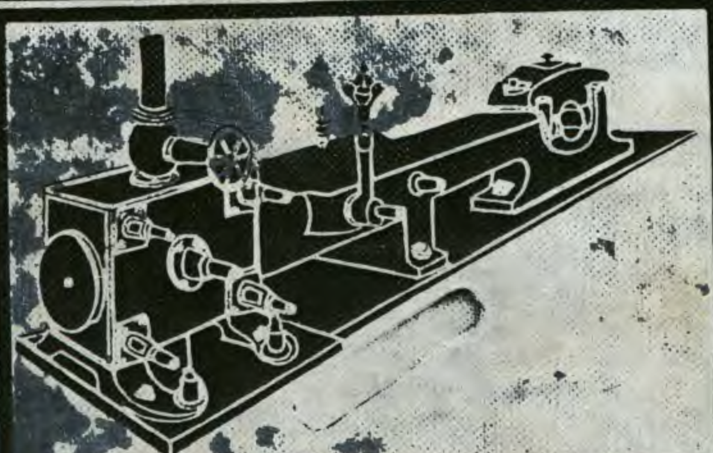
STEAM ENGINE TROUBLES

HAMKENS



STEAM ENGINE TROUBLES

A PRACTICAL TREATISE

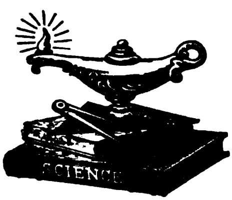
FOR THE ENGINEER, TELLING HOW TO LOCATE AND REMEDY TROUBLES WITH A STEAM ENGINE

CYLINDERS, VALVES, PISTONS, FRAMES, PILLOW BLOCKS AND OTHER BEARINGS, CONNECTING RODS, WRISTPLATES, DASH-POTS, REACHRODS, VALVE GEARS, GOVERNORS, PIPING, THROTTLE AND EMERGENCY VALVES, SAFETY STOPS, FLYWHEELS, OILERS, ETC., ARE ALL TREATED AND IF ANY TROUBLE WITH THESE PARTS ARE FOUND, THE BOOK GIVES THE REASONS AND TELLS HOW TO REMEDY THEM

BY

H. HAMKENS

MECHANICAL ENGINEER



THOROUGHLY ILLUSTRATED WITH DETAILED ENGRAVINGS

NEW YORK

THE NORMAN W. HENLEY PUBLISHING CO.

2, 4, 6 WEST 45TH STREET

1919

Printed in U.S.A.

COMPOSITION, ELECTROTYPING AND PRESSWORK
BY BRAUNWORTH & CO., BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

PREFACE

DURING a number of years the writer has been in the closest touch with steam engines, small and large, as designer and superintendent of erection, and has always felt that the troubles which an engineer encounters form a large and not unimportant part of his professional life. With the great number of different designs of engines in use it keeps engineers and power plant owners guessing why things go wrong with certain parts of engines, and being without the necessary theoretical knowledge, they are at a perfect loss to know how they can be prevented or remedied. It seems to be the hardest thing in the world to get any real inside information in case of trouble, for the reason that nobody wants to fix the blame and nobody wants to take it, and be made responsible. Another thing, it is very often a thankless job for the engineer to point out defects of an engine which may in future become a source of trouble.

The development and perfection of the steam engine is in a large part due to designers who made a close study of the existing designs with the idea of remedying defects and making improvements, in order to limit breakdowns and repairs, and in this way making engines more reliable, easier to handle and increasing their economical performance. But the constant improving and changing has added so great a number of differently arranged parts that it is almost impossible for the practical man, whose time is limited and who has not the opportunity to come in personal contact with the new features which have been introduced, to keep informed.

These considerations led the author to write a series of articles on "Steam Engine Troubles" which were published in *Power* a short while ago. The interest which was manifested in these articles led him to revise and extend the same, which are now issued in book form.

The author acknowledges with thanks many suggestions which were made by Charles H. Bromley, associate editor of *Power*.

January, 1919.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

CYLINDERS

CHAPTER II

VALVES

CHAPTER III

PIPING AND SEPARATORS

CHAPTER VII

BEARINGS

CHAPTER VIII

CONNECTING-RODS

CHAPTER IX

HOOK RODS

CHAPTER X

DASHPOTS

CHAPTER XI

GOVERNORS

CHAPTER XII

RELEASING GEARS

CHAPTER XIII

WRISTPLATES AND VALVE MOTIONS

CHAPTER XIV

ROD ENDS AND BONNETS

CHAPTER XV

OILERS

CHAPTER XVI

RECEIVERS

CHAPTER XVII

FOUNDATIONS

CHAPTER XVIII

ERECTING

CHAPTER XIX

VALVE SETTING FOR CORLISS ENGINES

CHAPTER XX

OPERATION

INTRODUCTION

For the operating engineer or the prospective purchaser it may be of interest to know which design and construction of different parts of an engine may best be selected and which should be avoided. In other words, it would be a good thing if engine troubles in general and particular could be listed, so as to give interested parties a chance to forestall costly and dangerous accidents.

In the following pages the troubles which the principal parts of steam engines are subject to are described, good design is contrasted with bad, the most suitable material for certain parts and the most approved construction of the same is pointed out.

The advantages and disadvantages of many designs are discussed, the troubles they are heir to and ways to overcome or minimize them. The directions given for correcting existing evils are easily understood, by following them breakdowns and costly accidents can be eliminated.

The principal considerations in the building of foundations, setting of templets and lining up an engine are given with a complete account of how to erect the engine in the language of the man on the job.

There are directions for lubrication, valve setting and testing, also how to locate trouble with an indicator, and what adjustments are to be made on new engines and maintained on old ones. Speed regulations, so essential to good service, are treated.

Simple rules for calculating safe pressures of main-bearings, stresses in flywheels, strength of cylinder walls, etc., are given which enable an engineer to find out whether the engine he runs is constructed on sound principles or not.

H. HAMKENS.

January, 1919.

STEAM ENGINE TROUBLES

CHAPTER I

CYLINDERS

Engine cylinders must be of correct size. Stresses in cylinder walls. Radiation losses. Bolts and nuts. Slide-valve cylinder. Square-corner Corliss cylinder. Lagging. Built-up cylinders. Steam jackets. Sleeves for cylinders. Material for cylinder castings. Insufficient drainage. Location of valves. Inaccessibility of cylinders with valves in heads. Ground joints. Regular joints.

THE power of a steam engine is, to a large extent, determined by the size of its cylinder, and its usefulness depends on the construction and material of the same. Many engine troubles are due to the size of the cylinder which is used, and to the power developed; the cylinder may be too large or too small, and the engine may not carry a sufficient load or be overloaded, either one is liable to be a source of trouble. Overloading will put too heavy a strain on the moving parts, while too light a load will be a heavy drain on the coalpile, altogether out of proportion to the work done. Since most of the engines in use are manufactured, that is, made to standard designs and from existing patterns, their power and economical range is dependent on certain predetermined factors, principally steam pressure and speed. Twenty years ago the majority of stationary engines were designed for 80 to 100 lbs. boiler pressure and a piston speed not to exceed 600 ft. per minute. The cylinder walls, size of bolts, thickness of flanges, piston rods and other working parts were designed for the prevailing boiler pressure with a factor of safety more or less determined by practice; tne dimensions of many engines were fixed by a rule of thumb, which answered very well under the existing conditions.

As long as boilers and engines are well matched and of the proper size this method may give fairly good results, but as soon as a change is made either by increasing the steam pressure or speeding up the engine in order to get more power the whole arrangement is thrown out of balance and trouble may be expected. Engine cylinders of small bore, 12 ins. or less, have, as a rule, a much larger factor of safety for the cylinder walls and other parts than the larger sizes, for the simple reason that on small castings time is saved in molding and casting by making the castings a little heavier than is absolutely necessary for safety's sake. The time saved more than compensates for the cost of the extra metal used. Medium and larger size cylinders, however, are made mostly without any excess of metal and they are, therefore, more limited in regard to pressure. If the steam pressure is raised to any considerable extent it is well to do some investigating and a little figuring; not only should the strength of the cylinder walls be ascertained, but also that of the steam chest, bolts and other parts, which are connected with the cylinder.

It is a good rule to let the combined stresses in the cylinder walls in no part exceed 1500 lbs. per square inch, whether due to steam pressure or other forces. The principal stresses due to steam pressure in the cylinder barrel are tensional, tending to disrupt the metal in two directions; one of which is longitudinal and the other circumferential. The latter is practically twice as great as the former, as a simple calculation will show. To get the correct idea of this we will take the two views of a cylinder, shown in Fig. 1, and assume that the inside diameter of the same is 1 in., that the cylinder walls are 1 in. thick and the steam pressure 100 lbs. per square inch; then the pressure on each half of the circumference for 1 in. in length will be 100 lbs. and the tension on each side will be

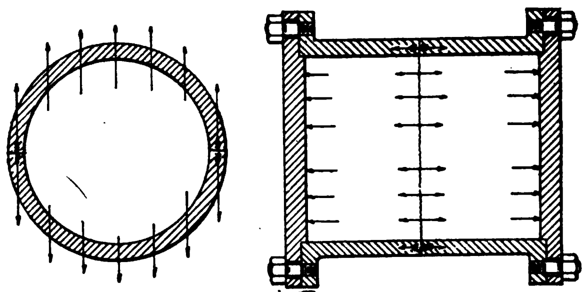


FIG. 1.—Stresses in cylinder walls.

50 lbs. per square inch. If both ends are closed the end pressure in both directions will be $\frac{0.785 \times 100}{3.14} = 25$ lbs. per square inch. The combined stresses will be $50+25 = 75$ lbs. per square inch. The cylinder would, therefore, be safe for $\frac{1500 \times 100}{75} = 2000$ lbs. per square inch. If the diameter was 10 ins. the safe pressure would be $\frac{2000}{10} = 200$ lbs., etc. Without any complications and great refinements a simple calculation of this kind, if applied to a cylinder, will indicate the danger point

which may be reached in reboring, or if the steam pressure is to be increased, it will also show the factor of safety allowed for the cylinder walls.

The price is very often the governing factor in choosing one engine in preference to another, and a slide valve engine may be selected or a high speed automatic engine, although it is a well-known fact that their steam consumption is very much greater than that of a Corliss engine. The lowest bidder is, as a rule, successful in securing the order. The consequence of this is that man-

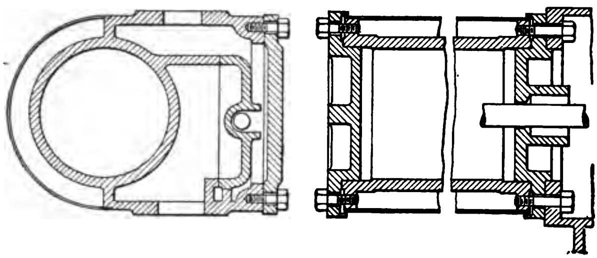


FIG. 2.—Slide valve cylinder with unprotected steam chest.

ufacturers endeavor to reduce the cost of their engines as much as possible, save time and labor in order to produce a machine, which apparently is just as good as a more expensive one, but will be found in the course of time to be of a very inferior kind and a source of no end of trouble and expense.

To illustrate this the cylinder of a slide valve engine, shown in Fig. 2, which represents a design much in use, will serve the purpose to point out two of the most troublesome features connected with engines. One of the bad features about it is that the whole steam chest and cover are not covered with insulating material or lagging, in consequence of which there is a constant loss of steam through radiation. Assuming that 1 lb. of steam is condensed per square foot of uncovered surface per hour and taking the uncovered surface to be 10 sq. ft. there will be 10 lbs. of steam condensed per hour; for an ordinary boiler this would be equivalent to a loss of 2 lbs. of coal per hour or about 3 tons per year. The steam condensed in this way is not only a total loss, but it very seriously interferes with the lubrication of the valve and

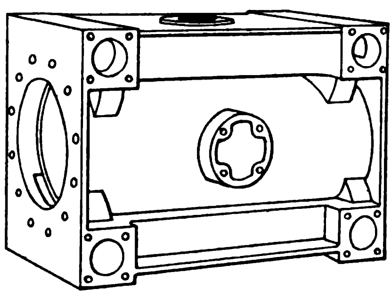


FIG. 3.—Corliss cylinder with exposed surfaces.

piston and increases the friction and the wear of the moving parts.

Another bad feature of the construction is that the connections between the cylinder and frame, back head and steam chest cover are made by means of tap bolts, where studs and nuts should be used. If the different parts are disconnected a number of times the threaded holes in the cast iron will wear out and there will be trouble in making the joints tight.

In larger engine cylinders of the Corliss type the radiation may be just as bad as in the common slide valve cylinder. Fig. 3 shows the old style square corner Corliss cylinder with a large exposed surface; not only are the ends unprotected from radiation, but the whole top is uncovered and so is the bottom. Besides, the exhaust chest is cast directly on to the cylinder barrel, which increases the radiation considerably. This construction became so troublesome, that in more recent designs the exhaust chamber is cast separated from the cylinder barrel with a space between them. To add to the gen-

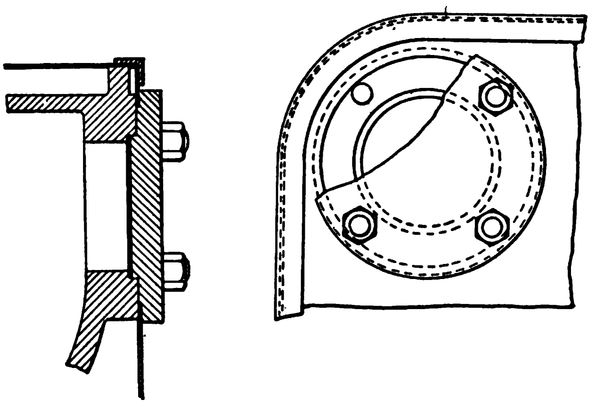


FIG. 4.—Bonnet flanges designed to hold the lagging in place.

eral wastefulness in some cylinders, side ribs are cast on the top and bottom plates for supporting the lagging. These ribbed cylinders are nothing but radiators, they condense a lot of steam and make the engine room uncomfortably hot on warm days. The lagging used to be made of wood, which, after a few years, would begin to rot or be charred from the heat of the steam.

In order to give the best service all the heated parts of a cylinder must be covered with non-conducting material, either asbestos or magnesia, and this again should be protected by cast iron or steel plates, so arranged that they can be removed readily without disturbing any of the other parts, as, for instance, on Corliss engines the bonnets or the valve gear. The common practice on Corliss cylinders is to hold part of the lagging in place by letting the bonnet flanges overlap, as shown in Fig. 4. If, for some reason or other, the side lagging plates have to be removed the whole valve gear must be dismantled, which is no small job and throws the engine out of com-

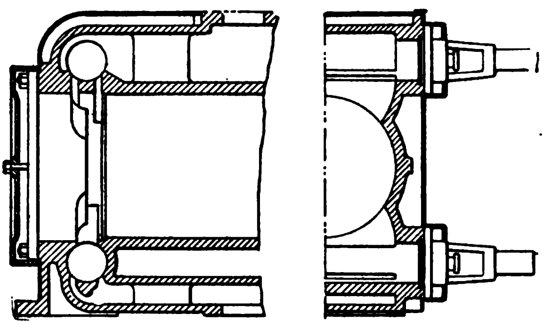


FIG. 5.—Corliss cylinder with protection for heated surfaces.

mission for a considerable time. The object of the construction is, of course, to reduce the cost without regard to any future trouble which it may cause. The most approved construction of the lagging for a Corliss cylinder is shown in Fig. 5, in which all the parts can be removed without disturbing the bonnets, valve gear, or cylinder head; all the heated parts connected with the cylinder as, for instance, the bonnets and heads are protected by means of polished covers, which serve the double purpose of preventing radiation and covering the joints of the lagging plates.

Very peculiar constructions of cylinders which give a great deal of trouble are found in many New England mills

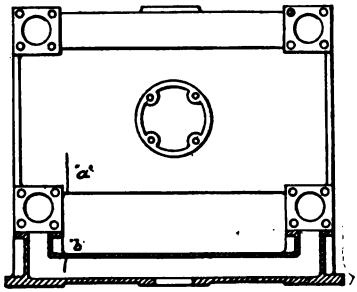


FIG. 6.—H.P. Cylinder with separate exhaust chamber.

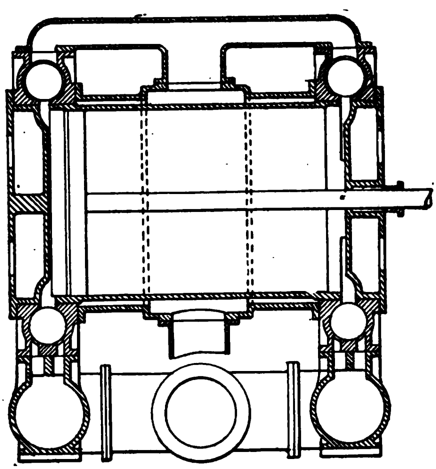


FIG. 7.—Low-pressure cylinder made in sections.

principally on tandem or cross compound engines of the larger sizes. These special designs are shown in Figs.

6 and 7, which represent the construction of a high- or low-pressure cylinder, respectively. In the high-pressure cylinder the exhaust chamber forms a separate casting which is bolted on below and acts as a pedestal for the cylinder. The difference of expansion between the cylinder barrel and the exhaust chamber is considerable, the joints are, therefore, apt to leak or the castings will crack at either *a* or *b*. The low-pressure cylinder in Fig. 7 is made in several pieces, it consists of an outside casing with the valve chambers attached, a sleeve forming the bore pressed in and two exhaust chambers with a connecting tee placed underneath, supporting the cylinder. Trouble is sure to result from the number of different castings, all bolted together; the joints are very hard to keep tight, but the most troublesome part is that the cylinder is insufficiently supported, which results in a rocking motion, loosening of the joints, leaks and finally rupture of some of the parts. Cylinders of this type found favor with some manufacturers, who had not the facilities in their foundries to cast the whole structure in one piece, and with others from the mistaken idea that shrinkage strains could be eliminated by casting them in several pieces.

The steam jacketing of low-pressure cylinders in compound engines was quite a fad for a while and the sleeve construction was favored by many engineers, until later it was shown by actual tests that the supposed saving in steam was not borne out by the facts, at least not in this design. As will be noted on the drawing the low-pressure cylinder is not jacketed with live steam but with steam from the receiver, the heating effect is, therefore, much reduced, the condensation first in the enlarged exhaust chamber of the high-pressure cylinder and next in the jacket of the low-pressure cylinder more than offset the slight gain in steam actually consumed in the cylinders. Except in pumping engines steam jackets have almost become obsolete.

If the sleeve of a jacketed cylinder is not put in the right way it may be the cause of considerable loss of steam and of a very annoying pound in the engine. Fig. 8 shows a method of inserting a sleeve as practiced by some engine builders, which must be condemned as imprac-

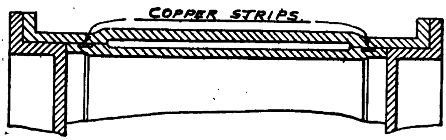


FIG. 8.—Impracticable sleeve construction.

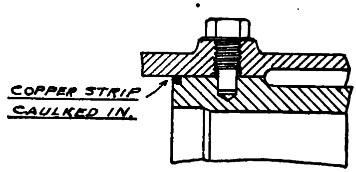


FIG. 9.—Correct sleeve construction.

ticable. A wide strip of copper is pounded into a groove at each end of the sleeve, it is turned the same diameter as the outside of the sleeve with a certain allowance for forcing in. The supposition is that the copper ring will expand more than the cast iron when heated and form a tight joint. The supposition is erroneous and the method is wrong, the copper might as well be left out. The correct way to make the joint is shown in Fig. 9, which consists in turning a groove with a slight taper in each end of the sleeve and after the latter is drawn in tight in inserting a $\frac{3}{8}$-in. square copper strip into the groove and caulking it. If a leak should develop in the joint all that will be necessary to stop it will be to expand the strip of copper a trifle more by hammering. Fig. 9 also shows a method to secure the sleeve at each end and keep it from moving lengthwise in the cylinder; this is effected by drilling a hole through the outside of the cylinder into the enlarged part of the sleeve and after tapping it part of the way a special tap bolt is screwed in. There should be two of these tap bolts at each end of the cylinder.

The material of which steam cylinders are made is of great importance as far as the life of an engine is concerned; in many cases the iron is too soft and the wear excessive, making repeated reboring necessary. The iron must be close grained and hard, but it should also have a tensile strength of between 25,000 and 30,000 lbs. per square inch. Remelted pig iron with a good percentage of selected scrap melted in a cupola seems to give the best results. On no account should a cylinder be made of air furnace iron which, as a rule, is not suitable for this purpose, since it is mostly very soft and porous, although its tensile strength may be higher than required. Some foundries have used a certain percentage of steel in their cylinder castings, but the result has not been very satisfactory, since it is almost impossible to make that kind of castings homogeneous, they are liable to have blow holes and soft spots. Attempts have been made to chill the bore of cylinders by lining the core with bricks or some other hard material; they have not been crowned with success. It is advisable to steer clear of such experimental affairs which are, in most cases, nothing but trouble makers for the engineer and power user. The best thing to do is to stick to methods which have proved to be successful in the course of time.

A good deal of trouble with cylinders is due to insufficient drainage. There is always some water in the cylinder of a running steam engine, which should be expelled as soon as it forms; all pockets in which water can accumulate must be avoided. This requirement is strangely overlooked by many engine builders who produce designs that almost seem to invite trouble in this respect. One of the worst designs is shown in Fig. 10. As

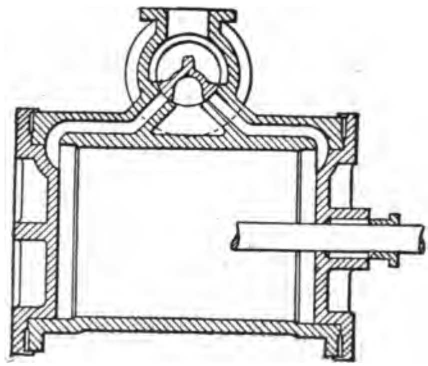


FIG. 10.—Rocking valve cylinder with insufficient drainage.

will be noted the steam chest is placed on the top of the horizontal cylinder, steam is distributed by means of a rocking valve. However, it is quite immaterial what the shape of the valve is, the main trouble is that its location is radically wrong. It is located without regard to drainage of the cylinder, and any water which is carried over through the steam pipe or is condensed in the cylinder must either be drained off through special valves at the bottom, or forced out with the exhaust in an upward direction, contrary to the laws of nature. Unless cylinders of this style are provided with very large snifting valves, one at each end, they are liable to be fractured by water. Similar trouble may be expected from any design in which

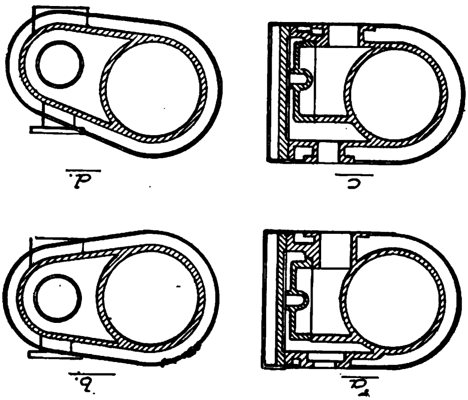


FIG. 11.—Diagrammatic views of cylinders for drainage.

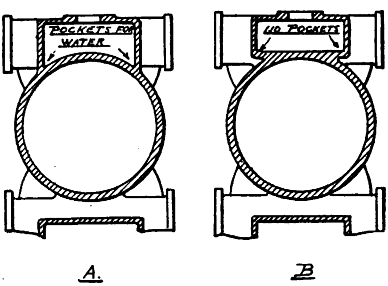


FIG. 12.—Cross-sectional views of steam chests.

the valve is located on the side of the cylinder in such a position that the water cannot be drained automatically. In Fig. 11 are shown four diagrammatic views of cylinders, in which *a* and *b* show the wrong location for a slide valve and piston valve, respectively, while *c* and *d* give the correct position of the same as to drainage.

In most Corliss engine cylinders the drainage is perfect at least as far as the cylinder proper is concerned, but in some designs water will collect in the steam chest, which may cause trouble if it is thrown over in a body by an abnormal rush of steam. Fig. 12 shows two cross-sectional views of Corliss cylinders of which the design

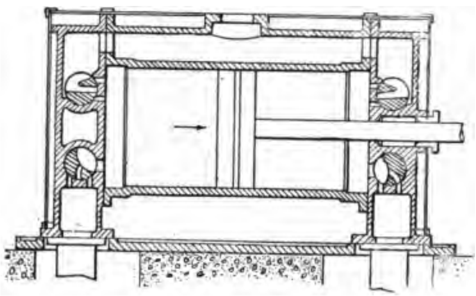


FIG. 13.—Corliss cylinder with valves in heads.

shown in *B* is to be preferred, since it is self draining, while the pockets shown in *A* will fill with water.

In order to reduce the clearance space in cylinders the valves are sometimes placed in the heads, this we find in many engines of the Corliss type, for which a claim of high economy is made. If the exhaust ports are located, as shown in Fig. 13, there is very little chance for water that accumulates in the bottom of the cylinder to drain off; it will have to be forced out by the piston. A very troublesome feature of this construction is that the only way to get at the inside of the cylinder and at the piston and packing rings is to remove the back head including the valves, bonnets and everything connected with them; the valve gear must be disconnected and very likely the end of the cylinder must be propped up. This is even in large plants with plenty of help and lifting facilities quite a job for the engineer to undertake, the consequence is that cylinders of this design are not examined as often as would be desirable. It is advisable to steer clear of such troublesome designs even if the economy is a shade better than with the ordinary kind.

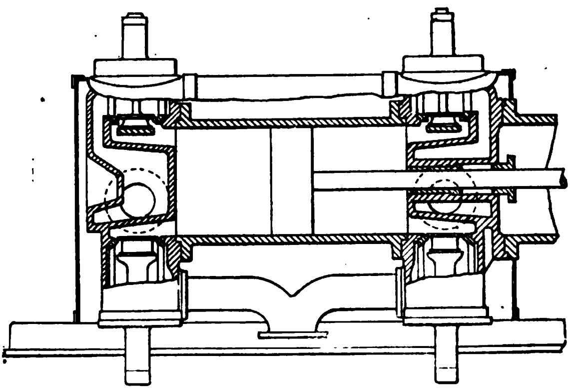


FIG. 14.—Complicated cylinder design with poppet valves.

The acme of complicity is shown in Fig. 14, representing a cylinder construction for high pressure and superheated steam. This design was originated several years ago in Europe and has been copied by engine builders in the United States. The poppet valves which are used are located in the cylinder heads, part of the valve gear is also attached to the latter. The cylinder proper consists of a simple cylindrical casting of symmetrical shape which is free to expand and contract. The inside of this cylinder is even less accessible than the one described previously. After removing the lagging, a part of the non-conducting material around the rear flange of the cylinder barrel must be knocked off in order to get at the nuts, steam and exhaust flanges must be disconnected, part of the valve gear taken off and the back head with the valves moved back on the foundation plates. If there is no spare engine to take the load, this work will throw the plant out of commission for the best part of a day, before everything is in running order again.

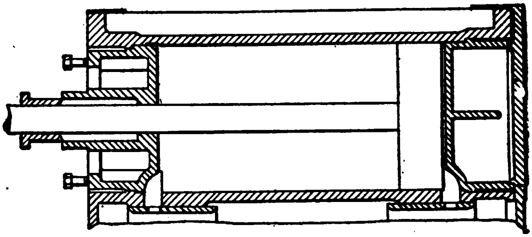


FIG. 15.—Cylinder and heads with ground joints.

The joints between the cylinder and heads will give trouble by getting leaky, which may be due to several causes. On some engines the joints are ground very carefully, obviating the use of gaskets. These ground surfaces are very apt to be damaged in handling of the heads, which, of course, will make them leak; if the leak is not stopped immediately the out-rushing steam will very likely damage the surface to such an extent that the surfaces have to be reground, which is a tedious and expensive job since often all the studs have to be removed and later put in again.

Fig. 15 shows a design in which the difficulty about regrinding has been successfully overcome, the heads are made without the customary flange, they are both inserted from the back; the front head is drawn onto its seat by bolts while the back head is held in place by a plate bolted to the rear end of the cylinder. The ground surfaces are very narrow, if a leak should develop a copper ring made of wire could be used for quick repair. The construction is rather expensive and has, therefore, not found much favor with engine builders.

The design commonly used is shown in Fig. 16, in this the head is made a good fit a short distance into the cylinder, the depth varying from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. according to the size of the cylinder; the balance of the head is relieved

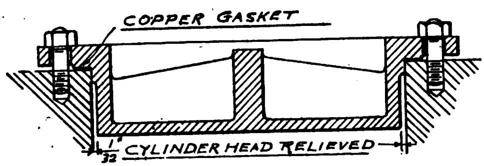


FIG. 16.—Regular joint between cylinder and head.

about $\frac{1}{32}$ in. all round, in order to make it enter freely. It is important to make the space as small as possible to prevent continuous condensation in the same. The inner surface of the head should be highly polished, also for the sake of avoiding condensation. The best material for the joint is a plain ring of soft copper not over $\frac{1}{16}$ in. thick and from $\frac{3}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. wide according to size. Formerly corrugated copper rings were much used, but they are easily damaged, in which condition they will not make a tight joint. Attempts have been made to make gaskets of a combination of corrugated copper and asbestos, they may be used for cylinders of small bore but not for the medium and larger sizes.

CHAPTER II

VALVES

Common slide valve. Partly balanced valves. Balancing rings. Influence of the angularity of the connecting rod. Equalization of cut-off. Valves for automatic engines. Prof. Sweet's valve. Piston valves. Adjustable valve seats. Adjustable piston-valve ring. Corliss valves. Port boring rig. Single-ported Corliss valves. Double-ported valves. Corliss valves which wear leaky. Steam valves must lift. Water in cylinder. Porter-Allen valves. Multiported valves. Gridiron valves. Effect of high-pressure steam and superheat. Poppet valves.

NOTHING is of greater importance on an engine than the valve or valves, on the operation of which depends, to a large extent, the success of the machine. The ingenuity of designers and engine builders has been taxed to the limit to make valves which will remain tight, are easily moved and give long service. The common slide valve has been used more than any other valve; it is, however, gradually being abandoned for the reason that it is so extraordinarily wasteful in the use of steam and subject to many other evils. Its simplest form is shown in Fig. 17; the principal trouble with it is due to the steam pressure acting on its large surface, causing excessive wear of valve and seat. Insufficient lubrication or hard spots in the valve or its seat are very often responsible for uneven wear and leaks. Leaky valves must be refitted and if the wear is uneven a slight cut should be taken off valve and seat and both of them scraped to a perfect fit. One of the things to look out for on valves of the older type is that they do not wear shoulders; this part was formerly often overlooked and the result was perhaps a broken valve rod or a tremendous waste of steam. Excessive

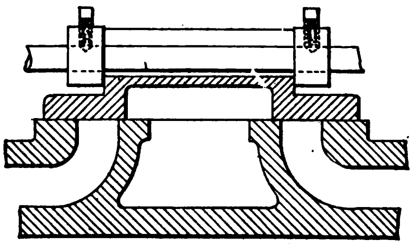


FIG. 17.—Common slide valve.

friction may make the eccentric run hot, in order to avoid this the valve must be balanced either partly or entirely.

A partly balanced slide valve is shown in Fig. 18, in which the partial balancing is effected by fitting a cup-

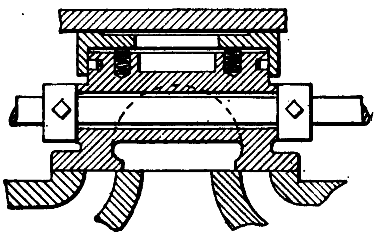


FIG. 18.—Partly balanced slide valve.

shaped ring over a cylindrical extension on the back of the valve. Several small spiral springs of German silver wire serve the purpose to hold the ring out against the face of the steam-chest cover to compensate for any wear which may take place. A packing ring keeps the steam from blowing through. There are several little things which do not work out exactly as contemplated, since there is no motion to the balancing ring except in sliding over the steam-chest cover, some gummy oil or a little dirt is very liable to get between the ring and the part of the valve it fits on, causing it to stick, rust may also play its part. This kind of valve, therefore, should be often examined and cleaned. One of the conditions of tightness is that the face of the steam-chest cover is perfectly parallel with the valve seat, which requires some

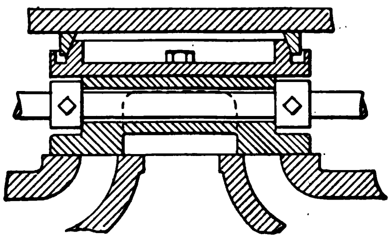


FIG. 19.—Conical balancing ring for slide valve.

very careful machining and fitting, more perhaps than the ordinary machine shop will give it.

An improvement in the balancing ring is shown in Fig. 19. In this design no cylindrical extension on the back of the valve is required, there are simply two flat surfaces provided to which the balance ring is bolted. The latter has a conical extension on the outer side over which a ring is fitted; the ring is split to allow it to expand when put in place. A small keeper prevents steam from leaking into the inner space. When the steam-chest cover is put on a slight pressure is exerted on the ring which has the tendency to force it against the finished surface of the cover and compensates for any wear. The ring will also adjust itself automatically if the surfaces of valve seat and cover are not exactly parallel.

The angularity of the connecting and eccentric rods makes valve motions irregular; slide valves made in one piece are more influenced by this than other valves which are divided into two or more parts, each of which can be adjusted independently of the others. On a common slide valve the four cutting edges are rigidly connected, a change of position of one changes also the positions

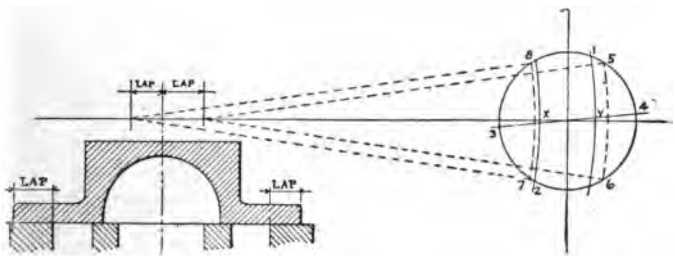


FIG. 20.—Equalization of cutoff.

of the other three, which is important in adjusting the valve for equal cut-off, etc. If the eccentric rod is long its angularity is often disregarded, but that of the connecting rod must be taken into account; its effect is to carry the piston ahead of its proper positions on the forward stroke and to make it lag behind on the return stroke. This is demonstrated in Fig. 20, in which the circle represents the path of the eccentric and may also be taken as the crank circle on a reduced scale. If the cut-off is to take place at $\frac{7}{10}$ of the stroke at both ends, represented by points X and Y in the diagram, with a ratio of the connecting rod to the stroke of 3 : 1, the relative positions of the crank pin will be at 1 and 2 for the forward and return strokes, at which the valve must close. The arc through which the valve opens on the forward stroke is 3–1, and on the return stroke 4–3: 3–4 representing the lead positions of the crank pin. The arc 5–6, therefore, represents the opening of the valve on the out stroke, and 7–8 on the back stroke. Transferring these positions to the motion of the valve we find that the lap on one end must be greater than on the other in order to give equal cut-off.

When the automatic engine made its appearance some

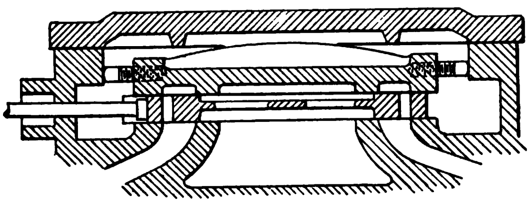


FIG. 21.—Prof. Sweet's balanced valve.

thirty or forty years ago many engineers tried their hands at designing balanced valves, only a few of these designs have survived, the greater number of them have been abandoned on account of their tremendous waste of steam. This latter fact has given the automatic engine a bad standing amongst power users. There seems to be only one really perfect balanced slide valve for automatic engines in existence, which was originated by Prof. Sweet. The main features of this valve are a flat rectangular plate with ports cut in and a self-adjusting pressure plate which fits over the valve. Fig. 21 shows a modification of this valve which has been adopted by a number of engine builders. The only troublesome feature about the valve seems to be that it requires the utmost care in fitting. All of the surfaces of the valve, seat and pressure plate have to be perfectly true, the valve itself must be of uniform thickness. This perfection which is necessary to make the operation of the valve successful can only be attained by successive planing, grinding and hand scraping. A good feature of the valve is that it will lift off its seat and relieve the cylinder of a moderate quantity of water.

Another form of valve which has found many advo-

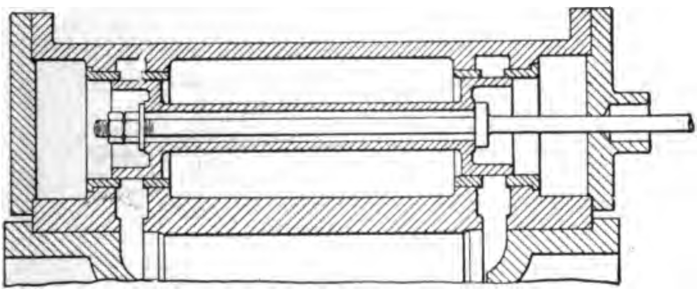


FIG. 22.—Plain piston valve.

cates amongst engine builders and users is the piston valve; it has, however, in the course of time gained a bad reputation. Fig. 22 shows a piston valve for a high-speed engine that has been used very extensively. Ordinarily the valve is made without packing rings with a very close fit in the seats by careful grinding. Since there are no means provided to take up any wear the valve is bound to wear out of round on horizontal engines. Another bad feature which it has in common with all piston valves is that it cannot lift off its seat. In this respect all piston-valve engines are alike, there is always danger of having a wreck, they cannot relieve themselves of any large quantity of water even if they are provided with relief valves. It seems to be impossible to construct piston valves which will give ample relief in case of water in the cylinder like a slide valve; designers of engines acknowledge the fact, and no attempts are made to improve conditions in this respect. Cylinder relief valves are used instead, and means must be provided to prevent water from entering in order to make the engine safe.

To make a piston valve steam tight, however, has been

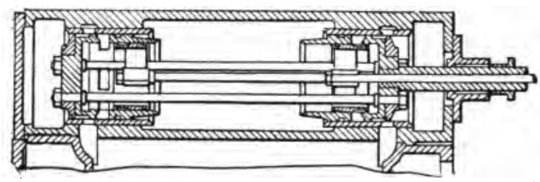


FIG. 23.—Piston valve with packing rings.

tried in a number of designs, and as must be admitted with partial success. A very complicated arrangement to attain this result is shown in Fig. 23; it is used in a large number of engines and consists of a main valve and a cut-off valve, the latter working inside of the other. Both of them are provided with packing rings to make them steam tight. The main valve works in bushings which can be renewed in case of wear. There are so many rods, nuts, rings, etc., used in connection with this valve, that it will be advisable to call in an expert, if anything goes wrong with the valve; very few engineers are competent to make any adjustments or repairs on the same.

The combined weight of the valve and all its parts is considerable, the work to move it at the speed which the engine runs, on which it is used including friction is quite an item in the coal bill.

A valve of similar kind but without the multiplicity of parts is shown in Fig. 24, the claim for originality of the same rests in the way the valve seat is made adjustable to prevent leakage. The valves are simple cylindrical castings with ports in their circumference, they work in sleeves which are split and can be contracted by means of adjusting screws. With a little care it is a simple matter

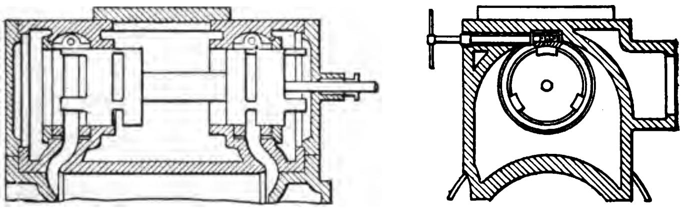


FIG. 24.—Piston valve with adjustable seat.

to make any adjustment. However, some caution must be used, if the ring is contracted even a trifle too much it will pinch the valve and cause either excessive wear or a break of some of the valve gear parts. Since the adjusting screw is accessible from the outside the construction is not fool-proof and cannot be recommended on that account.

A piston valve which probably gives the least amount of trouble of any piston valve ever designed is shown in Fig. 25. It consists of an outer ring and a taper plug fitted inside of it with two end plates for holding them together. The ring is split and can be expanded by forcing in the plug, which increases the diameter of the valve and permits the taking up of any wear of the valve and its seat. The adjustment can only be done when the engine is shut down by taking off the bonnets and slacking the screws which are tapped into the center cone, the nuts on the valve stem are next tightened and the valve tried by hand. In this way the adjustment can be made to a nicety. The outer ring is provided with keepers to prevent steam from blowing through. The ends of the ring

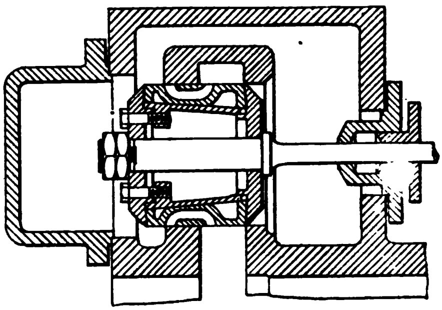


FIG. 25.—Piston valve with adjustable ring.

have conical surfaces over which the end plates are fitted, this prevents the ring from being expanded by steam that might leak through into the inside. Steam and exhaust valves are separate, whereby the condensation due to different temperatures in the valves is reduced to a minimum. This is a great advantage over other designs in which steam is admitted and exhausted through the same valve.

The valves which have found the greatest favor amongst engineers and power users were first introduced by George H. Corliss, who conceived the idea of distributing the steam in the cylinder through rotary plugs placed at the bottom and top of each end of the cylinder, the plugs or valves for admitting the steam were located above and those for the exhaust below the bore. In this way he reduced initial condensation and provided the most effective drainage of the cylinder which has ever been devised. His efforts were crowned with singular success, and the engines he designed became famous for their great economy in the use of steam, efficiency and

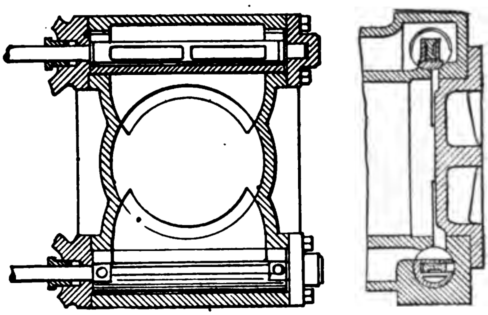


FIG. 26.—Early design of Corliss valves.

reliability. The location of the valves on the early designs of Corliss engine cylinders is shown in Fig. 26; no expense was saved in their construction, the valve stems were made of bronze running the full length of the ports with a bearing in the back bonnet. The valves were carefully fitted over the stems, and spiral springs as a rule were used to hold them on their seats. This precaution was much needed on the exhaust valves which seated upwards, the steam valves would lift in case of water or too much compression in the cylinder. The trouble with the bronze valve stems is that they wear rapidly in the stuffing boxes; to have them replaced by new ones is quite an expense. For that reason Corliss engines of recent design are provided with tee head valve stems made of steel.

The valves of old Corliss engines and also of the cheaper grades of new engines are single ported. On account of their long travel they are subject to considerable wear and are liable to become leaky. They will sometimes wear shoulders, which are hard to remove, at least on the seats, with ordinary tools. To avoid trouble and loss of steam on that account it would be a good

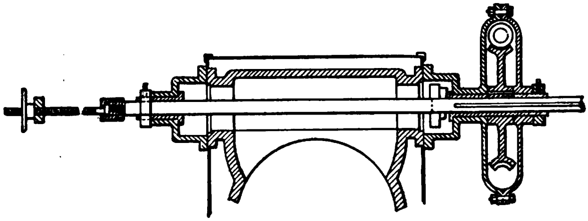


FIG. 27.—Port boring rig for Corliss valves.

thing, if a port boring rig was provided, which could be used to take a slight cut through the port hole if the seat shows any wear. A simple device of this kind is shown in Fig. 27; it consists of two brackets, which are bolted to the porthole flanges, and a boring bar with one or two cutters. One of the brackets has a gear case attached. The boring bar can be made of a piece of cold-rolled steel or shafting with a feed screw connected at one end. The drive can be made of a worm and wheel or a combination of spur gears. Many an engineer who is handy with tools could fit up the rig himself without much expense and be prepared for an emergency. For small and medium-size cylinders the boring rig can be driven by hand, for larger ones a motor can be used.

Reboring the porthole necessitates also a returning and refitting of the valve; for that purpose it must be set out of center in a lathe and the side which bears on the seat must be turned to fit the new diameter of the porthole. If there are no facilities for turning the valve it can be fitted by filing it to a template.

The steam and exhaust valves of a Corliss engine require much attention. In buying and installing an engine it is important to be sure that the valves and portholes are perfectly round and parallel. If they are not, it will take a long time to get the valves to seat properly, with that smooth oil-soaked surface which is desired to make them run easily and with the least amount of friction. Some manufacturers grind the valves on special machines with emery or carborundum wheels, but this is a rather dangerous thing to do. Unless the valves are of very close-grained iron and are carefully cleaned after the grinding process, some particles of emery may remain in the pores of the cast iron and quickly grind out the valve seat.

Emery, carborundum and all sharp-cutting materials are bad things to use on the moving parts of an engine. A good file or a scraper is best. The most satisfactory way to make the valves tight is to bore the portholes round and straight and then draw file the valves to a good fit. Valves fitted in that way, while perhaps not tight at first, will soon come to a lasting and perfect bearing. After a few days' run the new valves should be taken out and examined and the high places removed with a smooth file or a scraper.

Single-ported Corliss valves are seldom used on new engines, as they require a long travel and give slow steam admission and release, which is accompanied by wire drawing and loss of economy. Double-ported valves and cylinders are essential for modern Corliss engines. The steam and exhaust passages into the cylinder should be as short, and the flow of the steam and exhaust as direct, as possible without complicated and tortuous bends. Fig. 28 shows a good construction of steam valve. As indicated by the arrows, the change of direction is easy and

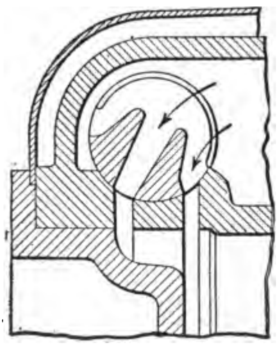


FIG. 28.

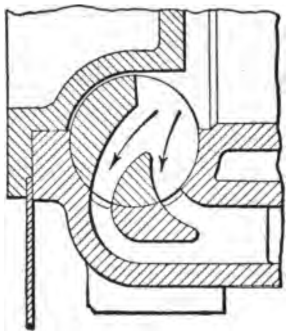


FIG. 29.

Good construction of steam and exhaust valves.

gradual. The exhaust valve shown in Fig. 29 has the same characteristic features; besides, it is located high up in the counterbore of the cylinder, which is an important factor in steam consumption, since the clearance is reduced considerably.

The arrangements of steam and exhaust valves shown in Figs. 30 and 31 are undesirable, though they are found in many engines. In Fig. 30 the steam has to pass over the top of the valve, and it enters the cylinder after changing its direction twice, which results in a loss of pressure. Fig. 31 shows the exhaust valve located below

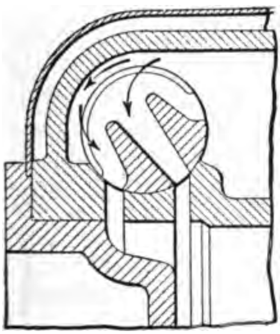


FIG. 30.

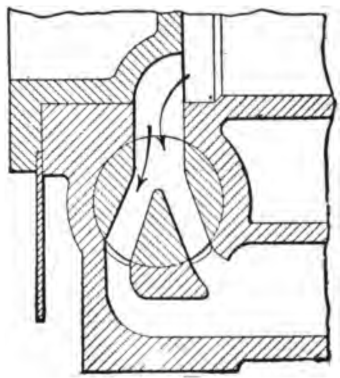


FIG. 31.

Undesirable construction of valves.

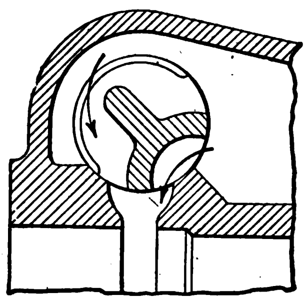


FIG. 32.—Double-ported steam valve.

the counterbore of the cylinder, with long passages and increased clearance. No high economy can be expected from designs like these.

Another undesirable steam valve is shown in Fig. 32. It is a so-called double-ported valve with a single steam port in the cylinder. This kind has a large clearance and the steam pressure acting on the valves when closed is much increased, consequently they open hard and the wear is excessive. Besides, the valve gear parts are likely to give trouble on account of the heavy strain put on them in opening the valve. Trouble may also be expected from the valve in wearing a shoulder on the seat, which, after

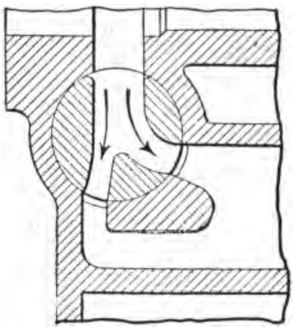


FIG. 33.

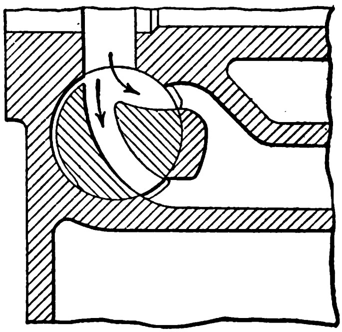


FIG. 34.

Exhaust valves which will wear leaky.

a while, will need reboring of ports and, probably new valves.

Some exhaust valves are designed, as shown in Figs. 33 and 34. Neither one of them can be recommended, since they will eventually leak and give trouble, especially the one shown in Fig. 34. The port above the horizontal center line cannot be made tight, unless the valve is forced upwards by means of springs, which are very objectionable. The seat of a Corliss valve should always be downward and not at an angle to the vertical line. Gibs and springs to hold the valves on to their seats must be avoided.

Steam valves should be made so they will lift off their seats and give relief in case the compression should run too high through a disarrangement of the valve gear or slipping of the eccentric, or if a considerable amount of water should get into the cylinder. What engineers call "a dose of water" is a dangerous thing and must not only be guarded against, but taken care of in the most approved way. The number of cracked cylinders and blown-out heads, caused by neglect to provide relief valves, is legion. Therefore a relief valve of ample size should be located at each end of the cylinder in as low a position as possible. The relief valves and the lifting steam valves are the only "cure" that we know of to counteract the destructive effect that will result from water in any considerable quantity being left in the cylinder after the exhaust valves are closed.

To prevent water from reaching the cylinder at all, it is of the greatest importance that the steam piping should be well covered, either with asbestos or 85 per cent magnesia, in order to reduce the condensation to a minimum, and also to have it well drained. There should be no possibility of water accumulating gradually in pockets and then discharging into the cylinder all at once. Even steam separators may become dangerous and a source of trouble, if the water is allowed to collect in them. Water cannot be compressed to any appreciable extent, and an engine is not designed like a pump. The piston speed is much too high and the area of exhaust valves is not large enough to discharge a great quantity of water at anything like the usual piston speeds. The velocity in well-designed pumps rarely exceeds 5 ft. per second, or 300 ft. per minute, which is about one-half of the ordinary piston speed of steam engines. The valve area of pumps is equal to or even larger than the piston area, while the exhaust ports of a steam cylinder are only about 15 per cent of the piston area, so it can be easily understood why an engine is wrecked if any considerable amount of water is to be discharged from the cylinder, even with the exhaust valves wide open. The relief valves can take care of only a small quantity of water at the end of the stroke, when the exhaust valve is closed and the piston travel reduced, and so can the steam valves by lifting off their seat.

The original idea of Corliss to separate the action of the valves for steam and exhaust and make them perfectly independent of each other appealed to many engine designers, who tried their hands at making improvements. Most of them have given up the unequal struggle, but a number of the engines they built are still in existence. A design which attracted a great deal of attention and found many advocates is shown in Figs. 35 and 36, illustrating the Porter-Allen valves. Instead of placing them above and below the bore of the cylinder these valves are located on the sides, the steam valves on one side and the exhaust valves on the other in vertical position. Each valve is provided with a pressure plate holding it on its seat; the pressure plates for the steam valves are adjustable, while those for the exhaust valves are bolted rigidly to the cylinder. It can easily be seen that a removal of any of the valves is a very troublesome and tedious affair, a lot of nuts have to be unscrewed and large joints to be broken, the large gaskets for the joints are easily damaged, and if so, expensive to replace. It stands to reason that an engineer will not be very anxious to take off the covers and examine the valves, especially on the larger sizes. The steam valves will lift slightly off

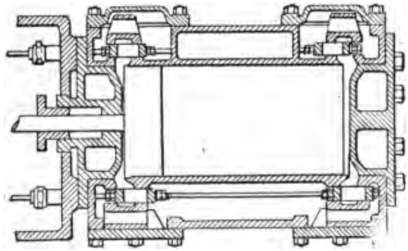


FIG. 35.—Horizontal section through Porter-Allen valve.

their seats, not sufficient, however, to relieve the cylinder of a large quantity of water. Engines with this type of valves have been used to a considerable extent in rolling

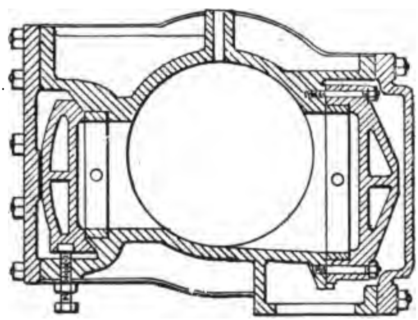


FIG. 36.—Vertical section through Porter-Allen valve.

mills for large powers and very fluctuating loads, the valves are naturally of large proportions and great weight; unequal expansion between valves and seats is often very troublesome, especially in starting up, which cannot safely be done until the engine is thoroughly warmed up.

In order to reduce the travel of valves, multiported valves have been designed, the most noted of which are the so-called gridiron valves with flat surfaces. Instead of having one or two cutting edges, they have a number of them, sometimes as high as a dozen or more. These valves require thorough lubrication and careful handling; they are easily broken since they are necessarily of frail construction and subject to shrinkage strains. Fig. 37

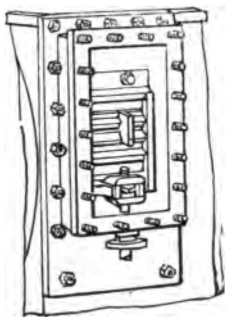


FIG. 37.—Vertical gridiron steam valve.

shows a gridiron steam valve placed on the side of the cylinder; the motion is vertical, therefore, the full weight of the valve, including friction, has to be overcome by the valve gear every time the valve is opened. When released the pressure on the valve stem closes the valve, assisted by its own weight. The steam chests, there are two of them, one for each valve, are separate castings, bolted to the cylinder. This is done for two reasons, first to make the seats of special hard iron and second, which is more important, to make them removable for refacing in case they become cut or damaged. Valves placed vertically on a steam cylinder are hard to lubricate, the lubricant will not stay on the surfaces but runs off.

A more elaborate form of gridiron valve construction is shown in Fig. 38. The steam and exhaust valves are placed in horizontal position, similar to Corliss engine practice, above and below at the ends of the cylinder.

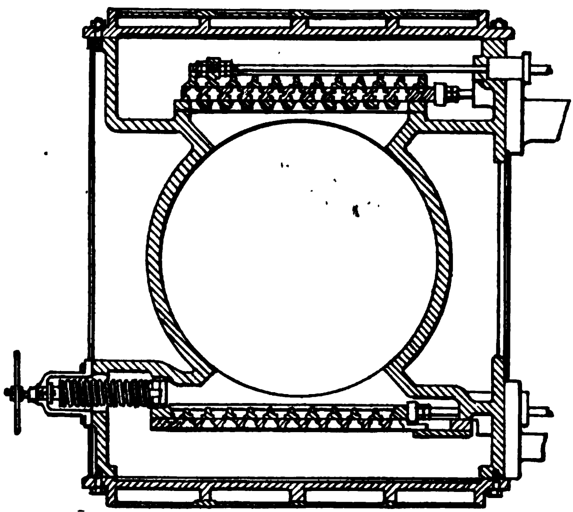


FIG. 38.—Horizontal gridiron valve construction.

The valves and seats are flat castings with a lot of slots cast in; they can all be refaced or replaced if necessary. The whole design is well thought out and executed, but, of course, if the least bit of hard foreign matter gets in between the valves and seats they are easily ruined beyond repair, making it necessary to have spare parts on hand. It is evident that with so many flat surfaces and cutting edges working together, the most excellent workmanship and the most careful treatment is required. To complicate matters on this design, there is an extra cut-off valve for the steam, which slides on the top of the regular steam valve. The valves are not balanced but are exposed to the full steam pressure, the steam valves always and the exhaust valves at intervals, with their large seating

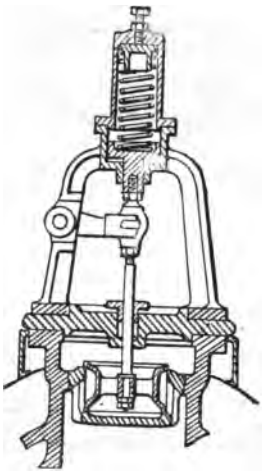


FIG. 39.—Double beat poppet valves.

areas they require, therefore, extremely abundant lubrication, otherwise they will pull hard and even stick.

While Corliss valves are identified with American steam-engine practice and were brought to their highest perfection in the United States, poppet valves have been developed in Europe, mostly Germany and Switzerland. It is only in recent years that valves of the latter design have been taken up by American engine builders, and the more successful of them are strictly of European origin.

High pressures and superheated steam puts valves with sliding surfaces, such as slide valves, piston, Corliss and gridiron valves out of business, for all of which a steam pressure of 150 lbs. per square inch and 50° of superheat is about the limit. The trouble with the higher pressures in connection with sliding surfaces is that the latter work very hard and require an excessive amount of

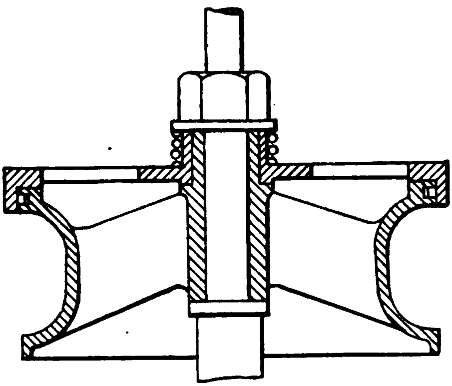


FIG. 40.—Poppet valve in two parts.

lubrication. Balanced valves are hard to keep tight under high-pressure steam. Superheat makes lubrication more difficult, besides it has a tendency to distort the castings on account of unequal expansion.

Poppet valves are usually of the double beat type, as shown in Fig. 39, for two reasons, first to reduce the lift and second to make them as nearly balanced as possible. A disadvantage of these valves is that the clearance is very large if they are located on the cylinder similarly to

Corliss valves. Some engine designers place them in the heads, this reduces the clearance, but makes trouble about getting at the inside of the cylinder. Another disadvantage connected with them is that the direction of the flow of the steam is changed several times, which results in a loss in pressure. They are not the ideal valves by any means, but for high pressure superheated steam we have nothing as yet which does the work better; they are subject to a great many evils and require close watching.

The principal troubles seem to be leakage and hammering.

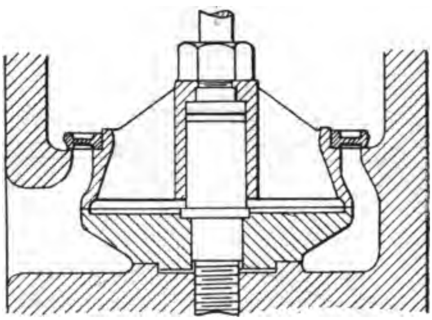


FIG. 41.—Poppet valve with flexible ring.

A change in the temperature of the steam will affect the valve sooner than the seat, it will expand more and commence to leak. To prevent this the steam valve is sometimes made in two parts, as shown in Fig. 40, in which an upper ring is fitted over the valve body and made to yield slightly in seating. Another way that gives good results is shown in Fig. 41, it consists in shrinking on a flexible steel ring which forms the upper seat; the ring will deflect under pressure and allow both lips of the valve to seat tight.

Hammering of poppet valves is generally prevented by cushioning on slow speed engines and by suitable cam

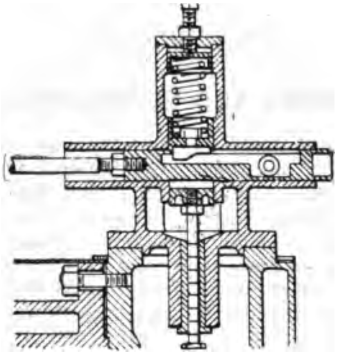


FIG. 42.—Cam motion for poppet valve.

motions on higher speeds. A very effective motion of the latter kind is shown in Fig. 42, which makes the valve operate noiselessly at 250 revolutions and over.

CHAPTER III

PIPING AND SEPARATORS

Principle of natural drainage for piping. Supporting of pipe lines. Blowing out of pipe lines. Combination of separator and throttle. Ordinary steampiping is not safe for superheat. Pipe joints. Welded joint. Lap joint. Screwed and shrunk joints. Pipe-joint clamp for stopping leaks. Steam separators. Stratton separator. Separators with baffle plates and corrugations. Direct flow. Prof. Sweet's and vertical separators. Receiver separator for high pressure and superheat.

Many accidents happen to the steam piping and throttle valves, which are caused by faulty design, construction or workmanship. The steam piping connecting boilers and engine must have ample provision for expansion and contraction; bends and elbows must be made to a long radius. Long and complicated steam pipes give poor economy. Natural drainage of the pipes is important; there should be no chance for water to collect in pockets. The principle of natural drainage is shown in Fig. 43. *A* shows valves and pipes arranged correctly. Water condensed in the pipe will either run back to the boiler or toward the engine. If it collects over the engine, it should be discharged through the drain pipe, which is usually opened to clear the pipe before the engine is started, or it will run into the cylinder and out through the exhaust when the cylinder is warmed up before starting. While the engine is running and taking steam, no water can accumulate in the vertical pipe.

View *B* shows the valve in an undesirable position near the boilers; there is a chance for water to collect

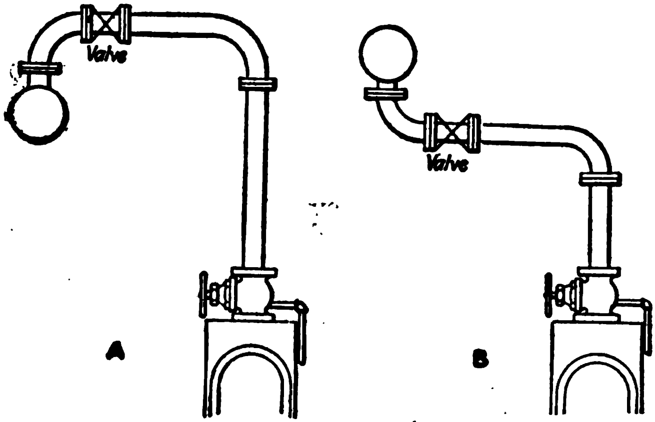


FIG. 43.—" A " shows a correct and " B " an incorrect steam main.

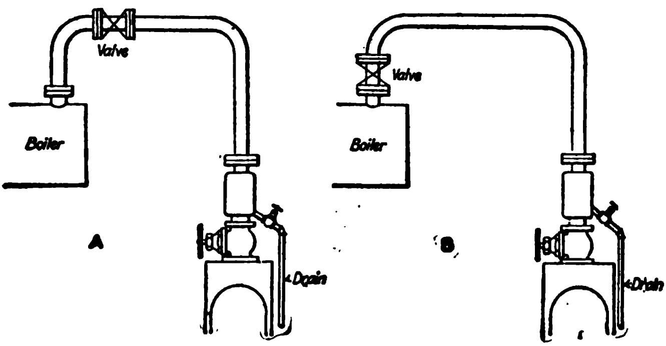


FIG. 44.—No water can collect in the layout " A ", if the drip valve is open; but " B " will collect condensate.

over the valve when closed, and on opening this would be thrown toward the engine, causing water-hammer.

If the engine is connected to a steam main an arrangement similar to *A*, Fig. 44, should be used. In this no water can collect except over the engine, whence it will be drained, as stated before. In *B*, Fig. 44, water will collect in the pocket between the main and the valve and may cause trouble.

To allow for expansion, loops or bends in the pipe should be placed in a horizontal position with a drop toward the engine. If more than one boiler furnishes steam, each should be provided with an automatic non-return stop valve that will close when the pressure in the main exceeds that in the boiler. A butterfly valve or an automatic stop valve should be placed in the steam pipe to be instantly closed from various parts of the engine room, by hand or by an automatic safety stop on the engine, if the normal speed is exceeded.

The steam pipes must be well supported by pipe hangers or brackets to relieve them of all strains due to their weight. For ordinary steam pressures flanged joints should be used with the flanges screwed on. All horizontal pipes should be pitched about 1 in. in 10 ft. for good drainage. If a pipe line has been newly erected or if any changes have been made in the old piping a careful test should be made by gradually increasing the steam pressure; the full pressure must not be turned on at once. A new pipe line must be blown out before it is connected to the engine or the separator. It is sometimes a revelation to note the things that have been deposited in the pipes; waste, wrenches, files, tobacco, bolts, gaskets are only a few of them. If any of such rubbish is allowed to get into the engine it will cause serious damage, perhaps a wreck. A separator located over the engine will act as a safeguard and prevent any foreign matter to reach the cylinder, but it must be cleaned out before the engine is put into regular service.

The combination of steam separator and angle throttle valve, shown in Fig. 45, is not to be recommended. In this arrangement there is a bending strain in the neck of the valve owing to the weight of the separator and steam piping; water hammer may also give trouble, and breaks in the neck are not infrequent. The separator and steam

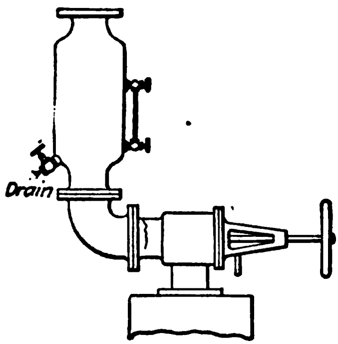


FIG. 45.

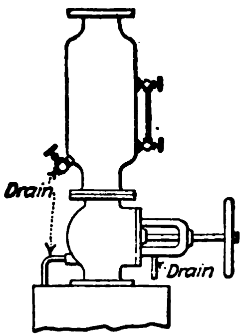


FIG. 46.

The right and wrong way to connect separator and throttle.

pipe should be placed directly over the globe valve, as in Fig. 46. Drains should be provided as shown.

The tendency in recent years is to raise the steam pressure and superheat the steam, if a change is made in a plant in regard to either one of these conditions alterations in the piping and stop valves are also in order. No ordinary steam piping put up years ago will be safe for superheat; cast-steel fittings must take the place of the former cast-iron ones and the old gaskets of paper, asbestos, rubber of other soft material should be replaced with some made of copper. Cast-iron pipes will not do for high pressure or superheat, new pipes of wrought iron or steel must be substituted with cast-steel or forged-steel flanges put on in the most approved manner.

The best connection between pipes and flanges is a weld which makes the joint perfectly solid as shown in Fig. 47. The process can only be carried out by the use of special machinery, it makes the joint perfectly homogeneous and eliminates the possibility of a leak between pipe and flange. The next best joint is made by lapping the

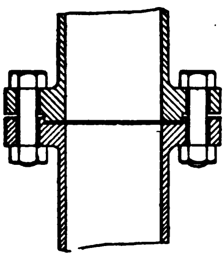


FIG. 47.—Welded flange joint.

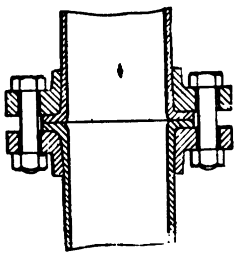


FIG. 48.—Lap joint for pipes.

ends of the pipes over, as shown in Fig. 48. The ends must be perfectly true, they are drawn together by means of wrought-steel flanges which conform exactly with the inner surface of the lap. The flanges must have a good fit on the pipe and lap and be made loose enough to swivel if a change in the position of the bolt holes should be desirable. This feature is a great convenience in erecting not shared by the welded joint.

The regular practice heretofore has been either to screw or shrink flanges on to a pipe, as shown in Figs. 49 and 50. The objection to the former is that the threads weaken the pipe and to the other that a shrink fit depends entirely on the care with which the job is done. For shrinking on a flange an allowance must be made for the expansion of the metal in heating and the subsequent contraction; the allowance varies between 2 and 3 thousandths of an inch, according to the size of the pipe, per inch of diameter. The pipe must be made perfectly round where the flange is to go either by turning or pressing, the flange is brought to a red heat in a fire, then placed over the pipe and allowed to cool; the end of the pipe is hammered over into a chamfer on the flange. If

FIG. 49.—Screwed joint.

FIG. 50.—Shrunk joint.

the job is done right the flange will hold, if not it is sure to come loose in time and leak.

A leaky pipe joint is very troublesome, but there are ways to stop a leak if it is not too bad and taken care of in time. The first thing an engineer will do is to try to stop it by calking, which may make it worse after a while: the next thing in order will be a clamp around the pipe near the flange and some packing driven in between. Fig. 51 shows a pipe joint clamp manufactured for this purpose which may overcome the trouble, it consists of a packing ring and two iron split rings; the packing ring is placed next to the leaky joint, the smaller iron ring follows and the large ring is slipped over the other two, which are forced against the joint by means of the set screws. The device is extremely simple and easily applied.

Every engine, large or small, should be provided with a steam separator in the pipe line near the engine, to catch water and dirt carried along with the steam. The

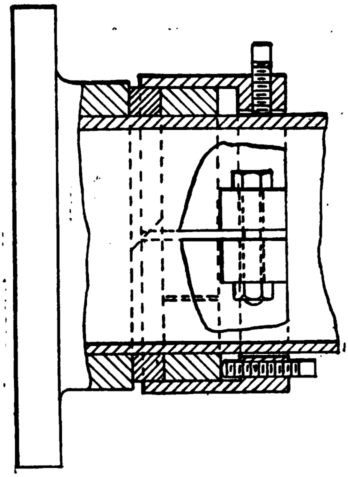


FIG. 51.—Pipe joint clamp.

best place for a separator seems to be right over the throttle valve on top of the cylinder, but it may also be located in the horizontal pipe leading to the engine. The main consideration is to make it large enough; a separator of insufficient capacity is worse than useless, it may even be dangerous if water collected in it is forced over into the engine by the rush of the steam. There are many steam separators on the market, most of which act on the principle of having any entrained water separated from the steam by a change of direction and velocity. One of the principal requirements is that all parts are accessible without disconnecting the steam pipe. In this respect the Stratton Separator, shown in Fig. 52, seems to fill the bill. It can only be applied to a hori-

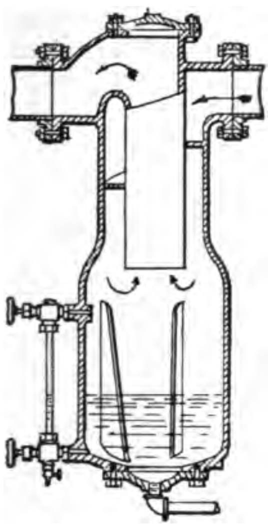


FIG. 52.—Stratton separator.

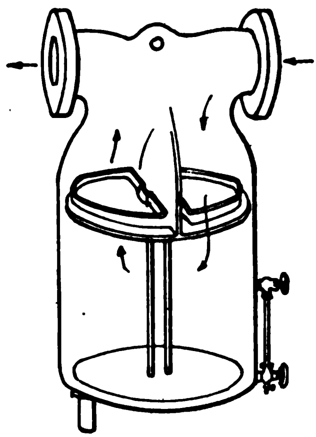


FIG. 53.—Separator with short collecting chamber.

zontal pipe; there are covers on the top and bottom, so that the whole inside can be inspected and cleaned. The steam is made to whirl around the inner pipe in a downward direction, on which course the water is supposed to be liberated by centrifugal force and collected in the bottom of the enlarged part. Dry steam flows upward through the inner pipe to the engine.

Another design of separator to be placed in a horizontal pipe is shown in Fig. 53. The steam plunges downward on one side into the enlarged lower part and rises on the other side, water collects at the bottom. Troughs are provided in the upper part of the large chamber to intercept any water which is caught on the sides. This separator is made purposely short, the object of which is to make the moisture in the steam impinge on the surface of the water in the bottom, where it is caught and retained.

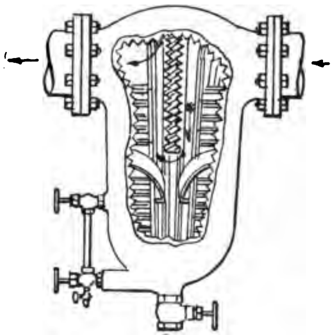


Fig. 54.—Separator with baffle and sides corrugated all over.

There are no loose parts on the apparatus and the facilities of examining the inside and cleaning are limited.

In some separators the direction of the steam is changed by baffle plates as shown in Fig. 54, which shows the arrangement for a horizontal pipe. The surfaces touched by the steam are corrugated acting on the principle of a washboard. The entering steam strikes the corrugated surfaces which retain the moisture and lead the water toward the bottom, partly separated by two plates from the main chamber. This separator seems to be very effective, the corrugations evidently add to its efficiency. The inside is not accessible except through a small hole at the bottom.

The baffle-plate feature is used in many other designs, one of which is illustrated in Fig. 55. It is made in two

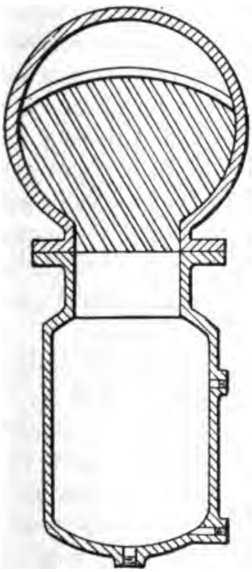


FIG. 55.—Separator in which only the baffle plate is corrugated.

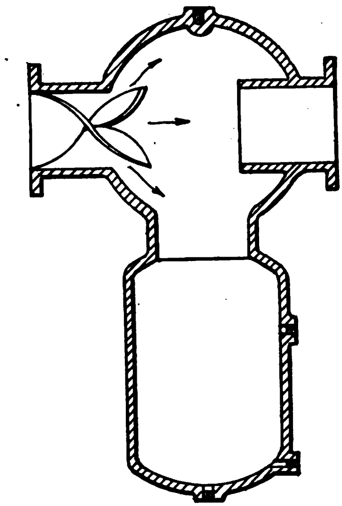


FIG. 56.—Direct flow separator.

parts, the lower part in which the water collects is a separate casting, bolted to the baffle-plate chamber; this construction makes the inside accessible without disconnecting the entire separator from the steam pipe. The corrugations in the baffle plate run at an angle to the rising current of steam which is supposed to prevent the steam from carrying any of the moisture caught by the plate over the top of the same. No other part of the separator is corrugated.

While some designers make a great point of the value of the baffle plate and corrugation, others claim that the baffle forms an obstruction to the free flow of the steam and causes a loss in pressure, and that corrugations are liable to retain the moisture long enough to be picked up again by the steam. Fig. 56 illustrates a separator in which neither baffle nor corrugations are used, nor is the direction of the flow of the steam changed to a great extent. The steam enters a large chamber through a screw-shaped nozzle creating a rotary motion which throws the entrained water against the walls of the chamber by centrifugal force. Dry steam flows straight into the nozzle on the opposite side, which projects partly into the inside of the chamber.

A separator that has found great favor with designers and users of high-speed engines is shown in Fig. 57. It was originated by Prof. Sweet, who, as the designer of one of the most efficient high-speed engines, knew probably more about the necessity of using dry steam in that type of engine than any other engineer. In some respects it resembles the Stratton Separator, but there is no centrifugal action. The steam enters on one side, takes a downward course until it reaches the mouth of the smaller inside pipe, whence it flows upward and out on the opposite side. The distinguishing feature of the separator consists in the perforated cylindrical plate which is placed close to the wall of the large chamber. Each perforation has a lip pointing downward, on which the moisture of the steam is deposited, dripping into a conical perforated plate and down into a reservoir. The moisture which collects on the inner vertical pipe is also led down into the water receptacle. The separator can be taken apart without disturbing the connection with the steam pipe. The large vertical chamber is protected from radiation by a steel jacket and insulating material.

A vertical separator to be placed directly above the throttle valve and, therefore, in the most effective position is shown in Fig. 58. The entering steam strikes a conical

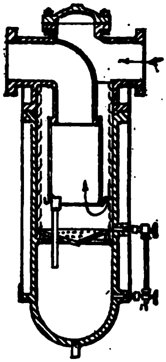


FIG. 57.—Prof. Sweet's separator.

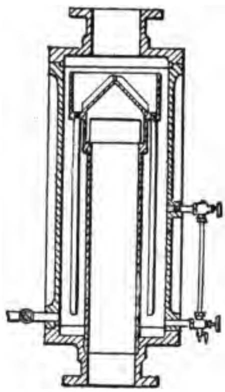


FIG. 58.—Vertical separator.

baffle plate provided with ribs on which part of the moisture is deposited to be discharged through small pipes into the well at the bottom. It is forced upward again by a vertical extension on the rim of the baffle and flows down into the large chamber and finally through side openings into the inner pipe and to the engine. Changing the direction of the flow of the steam repeatedly has the tendency to separate the entrained water very effectively. The outside of the separator body is covered with non-conducting material and a steel jacket. The inside of the separator is not accessible except by disconnecting the steam pipe and taking off the top cover.

For high pressure superheated steam and severe service neither one of the afore illustrated and described designs of separators will answer. They lack strength and

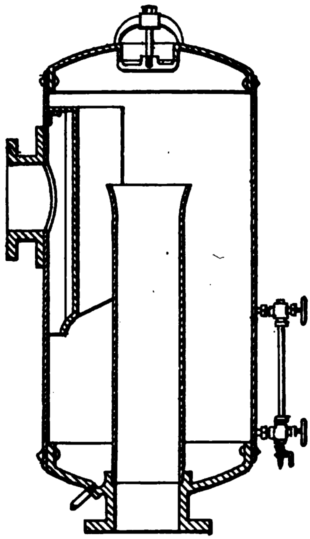


FIG. 59.—Receiver separator.

capacity, unless they are made of cast steel and unusually large. Fig. 59 illustrates a receiver separator which is designed for severe conditions. It is built like a boiler of sheet steel with cast-steel bottom and nozzle riveted to the shell and its inside is accessible through a regular manhole on the top. Steam enters on the side striking a baffle plate which deflects it on both sides, there is an opening in the baffle for the water to run out and collect in the bottom of the receiver. The steam freed from water enters a vertical pipe which reaches well up into the receiver. On account of the large capacity of this separator which should be at least twice the volume of the piston displacement, there is very little danger from flooding the engine with water; it also acts as an equalizer of the steam supply for greatly varying loads and is especially adapted for electric power stations.

The purpose of the gauge glass on a separator is generally taken to be to show how much water is collected in the same, so as to give the engineer some idea, when to blow it out. It should rather be in its place, though, to show that no water is collecting but that every particle of it is immediately drained off into an efficient trap. Of course there must be a valve in the drain pipe near the separator for emergencies, but this valve should be open for free egress of the moisture. The importance of keeping the water from collecting in the separator cannot be emphasized enough, although some manufacturers claim their apparatus should have water in the bottom against which the current of the steam and particles of moisture in the same impinge.

CHAPTER IV

THROTTLE AND EMERGENCY VALVES

Two ways of closing a valve. Throttle with pilot valve. Angle valve. Valve seat with taper thread. Quick-closing valves. Prof. Sweet's throttle. Large valve construction for rolling mills. Balanced throttle valves are not reliable. Emergency valve. Butterfly valve. Throttle closed by means of a sprocket chain. Throttle closed by steam pressure. Emergency valve placed over the throttle. Arrangement for closing the throttle automatically and from certain places in the engine room. Speed limit device attached to the crosshead.

The throttle valve of an engine should be of very rugged construction and quick closing. Slow-closing gate valves can, therefore, not be used, although they would offer the least resistance to the steam on account of the passage being perfectly straight without any bends as in the customary globe or angle valves.

There are two ways of making the valves close, against the steam pressure or with the same, both ways are shown in Fig. 60. Valves closing with the pressure are to be preferred, for the reason that they will stay closed if anything happens to the spindle, screw or yoke, while valves constructed on the other principle have the full steam pressure always acting on these parts when closed, and will open of their own accord if any of the parts mentioned give way. On the other hand valves having the full pressure on top open hard and must, therefore, be provided with a pilot valve or a bye-pass.

Fig. 61 shows a valve with a pilot valve, by opening the

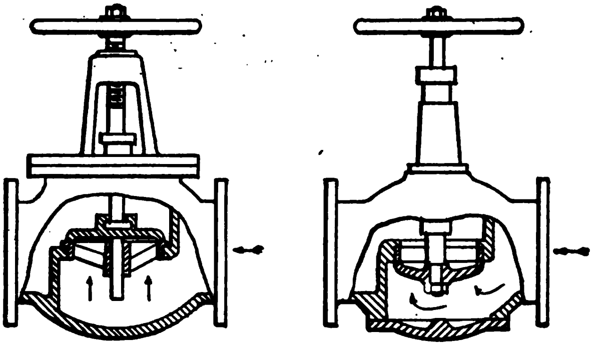


FIG. 60.—Two ways of closing a throttle.

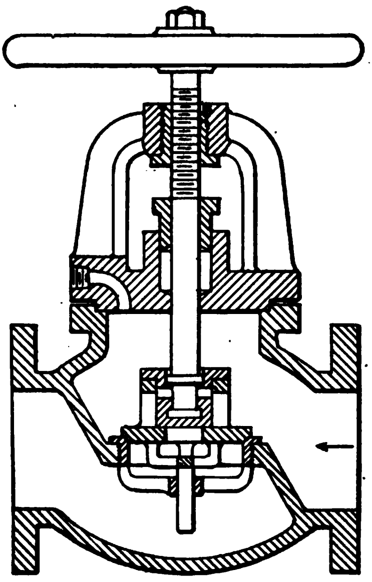


FIG. 61.—Throttle with pilot valve.

latter the pressure can be equalized on both sides of the main valve, taking the strain off the spindle and other parts in opening. The small valve is also used for warming up the cylinder before the engine is started. However, the engine should not be started with the pilot valve, otherwise the pressure on the main valve will not be sufficiently reduced to open it; at least on the larger sizes, since the engine would use considerable more steam than can pass through the small opening of the valve and prevent the pressure from becoming equalized.

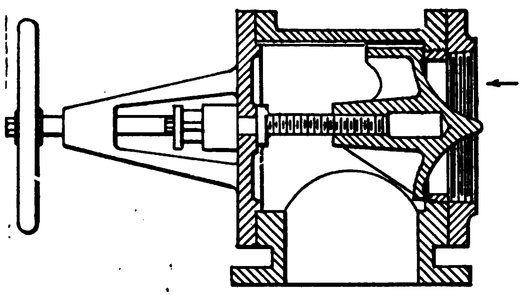


FIG. 62.—Angle throttle valve.

Throttle valves closing against the pressure do not need a pilot valve or bye-pass; with them all that is necessary to warm up the engine is to just break the valve and let through a small amount of steam. In that respect that type of valve is very convenient. Fig. 62 shows an angle valve of this type, which has some good features. The angle construction in this case is not objectionable, since the elbow connecting valve and piping can be made of steel strong enough to eliminate all danger of it cracking. The valve disc is of unusually substantial construction with easy curves at the end which offers a minimum of resistance to the steam; it is provided with a tongue running in a groove on the valve body, which keeps it from turning and makes it seat always in the same place. The screw thread on the spindle is inside of the valve and works in the hub of the valve disc; it is removed from outside influences and cannot be damaged, which is often the case with an outside thread. The valve stem can be repacked with the valve in any position, a collar on the spindle making a tight joint on the bonnet; in fact there is hardly any necessity for a stuffingbox and packing. This is different from other designs which have the troublesome feature that the stem can only be repacked when the valve is either wide open or entirely closed, and on which the packing is always exposed to the full steam pressure making it wear rapidly on account of the combined turning and sliding motion of the spindle. There is one thing, however, on this valve which will not please the engineer, there is nothing to show whether it is open or closed or how much it may be open, since the spindle does not move lengthwise and there is no thread or any other mark which would indicate the position of the valve.

The valve seat in Fig. 62 is screwed into place with a taper thread, it has no shoulders, can easily be removed and without much expense be repaired or renewed. Some valves are provided with a straight thread and screw up against a shoulder; they are liable to come loose in time and give trouble, unless the threads are a perfect fit in the seat or they are secured in some other way.

If anything goes wrong with an engine every second counts and it is of the greatest importance to have some way of shutting off the steam immediately. For this reason quick-closing throttle valves have been designed. Prof. Sweet took the lead in this respect with the quick-closing valve shown in Fig. 63. This throttle, which he has been using on his high-speed engines, is altogether different from the regular run of valves. In the first place the passage through the valve is straight, there are no turns for the steam to take, consequently there is no resistance and no loss in pressure; another advantage is that it is self-draining, which the regular globe-pattern throttle valve is not. But the principal advantage of the

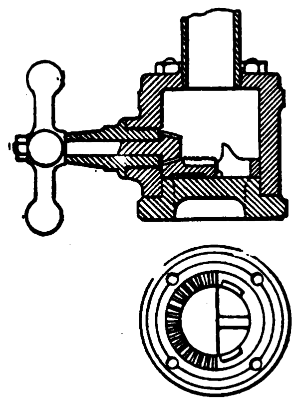


FIG. 63.—Prof. Sweet's throttle.

valve is that it takes only about two turns of the hand wheel to close or open it. The valve seat is always protected by the valve itself, it is never exposed to the action of the steam, neither is it affected by rust; it will, therefore, remain tight almost indefinitely.

A similar valve construction for large rolling-mill engines is shown in Fig. 64; it has three openings instead of one as Prof. Sweet's, and on account of its size is provided with a second valve on top of the main valve, which

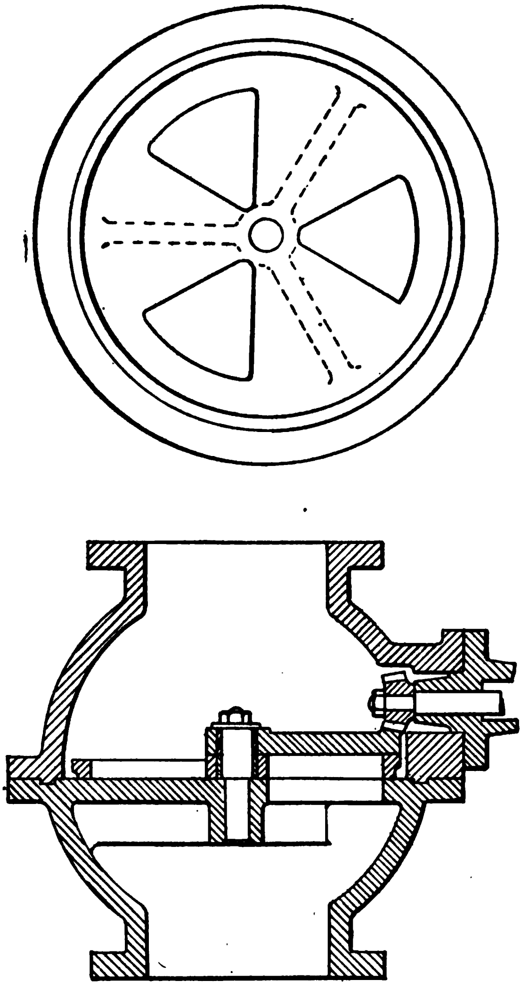


FIG. 64.—Quick-closing throttle for rolling mill engines.

acts as a pilot valve to equalize the pressure on both sides of the opening. This valve is either full opened or closed by one turn of the hand wheel.

Balanced throttle valves of the double beat and also of the piston type have been tried again and again but they have never been a great success, since they cannot be made tight permanently. If either one of these two kinds of valves is used on an engine, as they are sometimes on reversing engines for rolling mills or hoists, there should be another valve in the line of the regular mush-

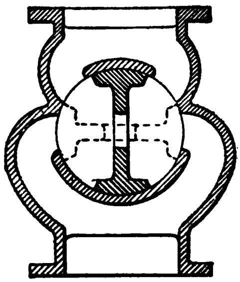


FIG. 65.—Emergency valve.

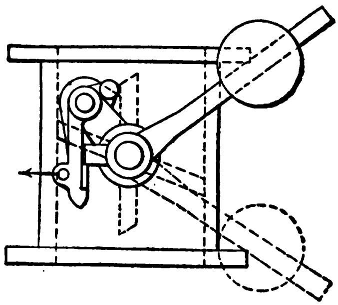


FIG. 66.—Butterfly valve.

room type, which is closed if the engine is to be shut down for any length of time, in order to keep steam from leaking through the main valve and giving the engine a sudden start.

An engineer cannot always be at the throttle or near it, he has to attend to other duties about the engine room. There should, therefore, be some means provided for instant action if trouble comes which makes it necessary to slow down the engine or for an immediate shutting off of the steam. For this purpose emergency valves or overspeed prevention devices have been designed, which either operate automatically or are under the control of the attendant at different places on the premises.

An emergency valve which is usually placed directly over the throttle is shown in Fig. 65, it can be operated either by hand or by a special overspeed device. If a latch at the end of the valve stem is tripped the valve is

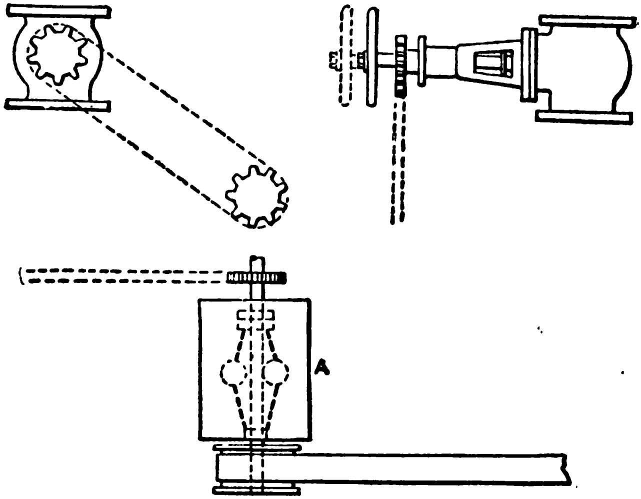


FIG. 67.—Stop valve operated by flyball governor.

moved by a weight to the position shown in dotted lines shutting off the steam.

Instead of the emergency valve shown, a butterfly valve provided with a weight and tripping device may be used, as shown in Fig. 66. Neither of these is steam-tight, but when closed they will stop the engine. Care must be taken not to have the stuffingbox too tight, or the weight may not be sufficient to close the valve.

Fig. 67 shows an arrangement in which a sprocket chain is made to turn a wheel on the valve stem and close the throttle as soon as the speed limit *A*, which is a small governor, throws in a clutch. The power to do this work is derived either from the crankshaft by means of a belt, or from a heavy weight which has to be wound up by hand. This device is liable to get out of order, especially if the valve stem works tight. To overcome the trouble with tight valve stems is the object of some designs. Fig. 68 shows one in which the steam pressure is utilized to

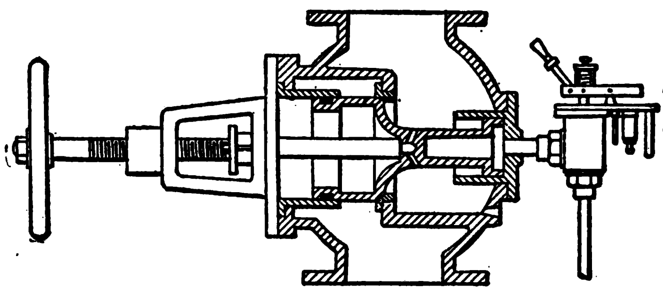


FIG. 68.—Steam operated trip on throttle valve.

close the throttle quickly in case of emergency. The throttle-valve stem is not rigidly connected to the valve. As soon as it is screwed back the steam forces the valve open; it enters also through the small holes and fills the space above the valve. Steam also passes the small piston, which is slightly less in diameter than the bore of the little cylinder that is connected to an auxiliary valve operated by a trip-lever. As soon as this lever trips the auxiliary valve, the steam behind the small piston escapes, throwing the main valve out of balance, closing it. The trip-lever may be operated by an auxiliary governor set for a certain speed, by an electro-magnet or by hand. On an old engine a valve, as shown in Fig. 69, may be placed right over the throttle valve. It has the same tripping device as the one in Fig. 68 and is operated on the same principle. It is opened by a small handwheel which works a pinion and a rack, the latter being cut into the valve stem.

Complications and intricate devices on these valves should be avoided; everything must be handy for the

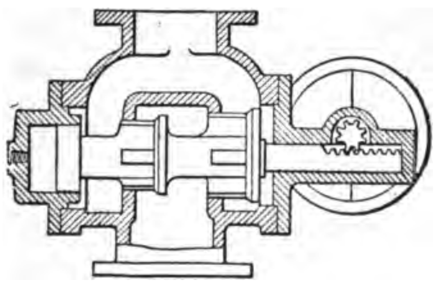


FIG. 69.—Another type of quick-closing valve.

engineer and arranged so that he can quickly shut off the steam in case of emergency. The throttle-valve handwheel of an engine is located in the most dangerous position if the engine runs away. It takes a man of iron nerve to step into the pass of the flywheel to shut off the steam by turning the handwheel of a slow-closing throttle. Means should therefore be provided for shutting off the steam from both sides of the cylinder and from certain places inside and outside of the engine room; and besides, there should be an automatic device that will stop the engine if the speed exceeds five or ten revolutions above the normal. A complete arrangement which will accomplish this is shown in Fig. 70, consisting of a steam, electric and hand-operated system. The methods of opera-

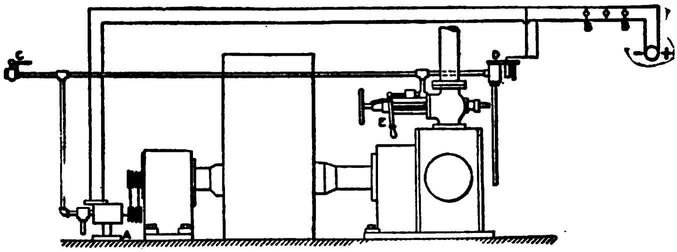


FIG. 70.—Diagrammatic layout of emergency engine stops.

tion are as follows: The speed-limit device *A*, which consists of a small governor inclosed in a cast-iron dustproof case, and driven by chain, ropes or belt from the end of

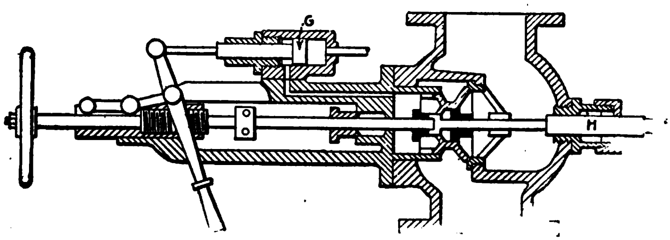


FIG. 71.—Section of steam operated valve.

the mainshaft, opens a small relief valve and makes electrical contact as soon as a certain speed is exceeded. Steam is exhausted from one side of the small piston *G*, in Fig. 71, which shows the throttle valve in detail; this snaps the toggle links and trips the valve, which is closed by steam acting on the plunger *H*. The same result can be obtained by closing any one of the switches *B*, located in convenient places in the engine room, or by opening hand relief valve *C*, also by tripping the valve *D* by hand or throwing over hand lever *E*. The throttle can also be closed by the handwheel, independent of the tripping devices.

With this or a similar system the engineer should

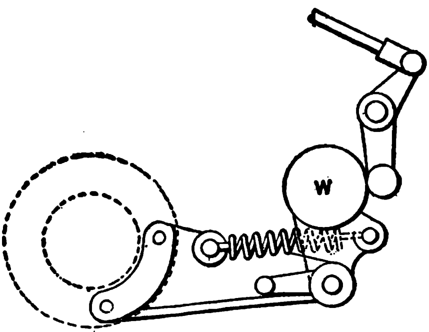


FIG. 72.—Emergency stop connected to crosshead.

make it a practice to test the apparatus when stopping the engine, for if anything is allowed to get out of order the whole thing may become useless. There is such a thing as overdoing it, and unless a man has the time and skill to attend to all these devices, the simpler methods described are to be preferred.

Fig. 72 shows a simple speed-limit device which may be connected to the crosshead. The weight *W* is held in position by a spring. When the engine exceeds a certain speed, the inertia of the weight will make it fly ahead at the end of the stroke and strike a lever connected to the governor, tripping a latch and releasing a spring, which will force the governor to its highest position and prevent steam entering the cylinder. The trip-rod of this device can be connected to a self-closing butterfly valve or some of the other safety devices.

CHAPTER V

PISTONS

Good and bad piston-rod construction. Straight fit with key. Sharp corners are dangerous. Taper fit. Cold rolled steel is unfit for piston rods. Piston-rod construction for rolling mills. Threaded piston rod. Limit of stresses in rods. Method of securing the rod to the piston. Follower bolts must be of suitable material. Different designs of follower and bolts. Junk rings. Packing rings.

It seems that engine accidents run in series. Aside from flywheel accidents, which probably cost more lives and money than all other engine trouble combined, many accidents are due to faulty piston-rod construction. Years ago any old connection between crosshead and piston rod was considered good enough, and the cheapest and most dangerous was the most common. A troublesome connection between the piston rod and crosshead is shown in Fig. 73. The rod was slightly reduced in diameter at the crosshead, with a straight fit in the latter. A hole for the key was cut into the rod, with the corners made square. The trouble came as soon as the slight shoulder had hammered into the crosshead or been reduced on the rod, creating a pound. The key had to be taken up, more pounding and keying followed and, finally, rupture through the sharp corners of the hole, as shown. The construction is bad and should be avoided.

Fig. 74 shows a piston rod with a taper fit in the crosshead and the hole for the key half-round at the ends. This is a slight improvement over the first-described straight rod. If the diameter of the rod is not increased, the only advantage is that it will not hammer into the crosshead, the taper being about $\frac{7}{8}$ in. per foot; but the disadvantage is that the taper reduces the diameter of the rod at the farthest end of the keyhole so much that there is not sufficient metal left to resist the alternating forces of the steam pressure acting on the piston and rod, the metal crystallizes and a break results. If the rod is made sufficiently large in the crosshead, with

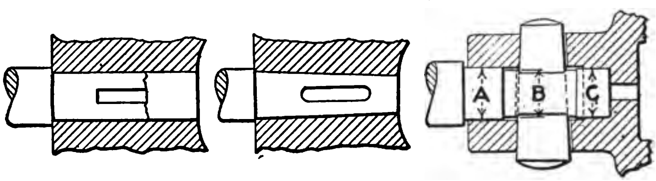


FIG. 73. FIG. 74. FIG. 75.
Piston-rod fastenings in crosshead.

a corresponding increase in the key, the design may be satisfactory.

It is well to investigate the kind of steel in a piston rod. Cold-rolled is not fit to be used, but open-hearth steel of 0.30 to 0.35 carbon can be recommended. If, for reasons of quick repairs or easy dismantling, as in rolling-mill work, a keyed piston rod is desirable, it should be extra large in diameter and the reduction at the crosshead should be made in three offsets. The diameter A, Fig. 75, should be $\frac{1}{8}$ in. smaller than the rod, B, $\frac{1}{16}$ in. less than A, and C about $\frac{1}{16}$ in. less than B, and A and C should be easy driving fits, while B should be at least $\frac{1}{32}$ in. loose in the bore. The end of the piston rod should fit against the bottom of the bore C, a small hole leading into the center core of the crosshead. The key must be located in part B, the key and holes to be half-round at the sides.

A disadvantage of the keyed piston rod is that the clearance in the cylinder cannot be adjusted. Where this is essential, the piston rod should be screwed into the crosshead and provided with a large check nut. The outside diameter of the thread should be about the same

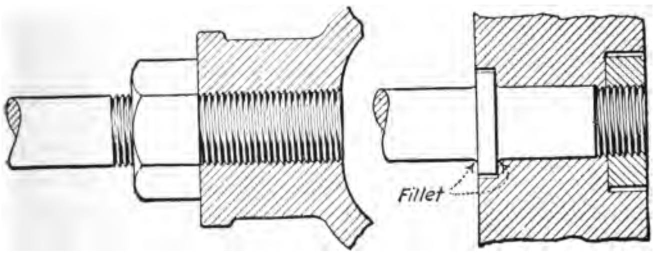


FIG. 76. FIG. 77.

Threaded piston-rod fastenings.

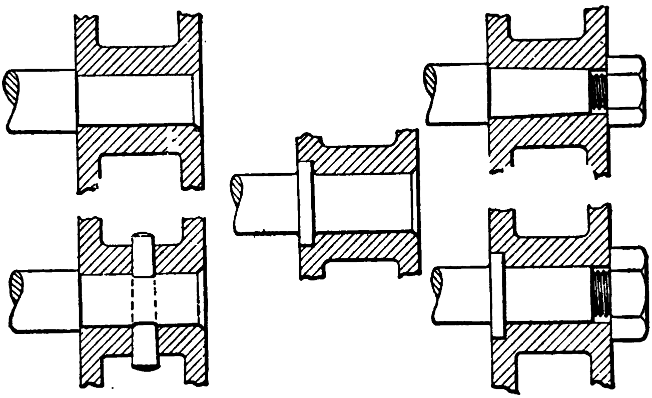
as the diameter of the rod and the length of the thread in the crosshead from $1\frac{3}{4}$ to 2 times the diameter of the rod. Care must be taken to make the thread a good fit. Fig. 76 shows the connection of a threaded piston rod and crosshead. The number of threads per inch may be made as follows: For $2\frac{1}{4}$- to $2\frac{1}{2}$-in. diameter rod, 8 threads per inch; for $2\frac{3}{4}$- to 3-in. diameter rod, 7 threads per inch for $3\frac{1}{4}$- to 4-in. diameter rod, 6 threads per inch; for $4\frac{1}{4}$- to 5-in. diameter rod, 5 threads per inch; for $5\frac{1}{4}$- to 6-in. diameter rod, 4 threads per inch; for $6\frac{1}{4}$- to 8-in. diameter rod, 3 threads per inch. The threaded piston rod is to be recommended if economy is desired, for it enables the builder to reduce the clearance in the cylinder to a minimum and to adjust it to be equal at both ends of the stroke.

The stress of piston rods in tension and pressure, whether keyed or screwed, should not be more than 6000 lbs. per square inch in the weakest section, and the shearing stress of keys and rods must not exceed 5000 lbs. per square inch. A piston rod occasionally breaks in the piston, but this does not happen as often as in the crosshead. The reason for this is that most of the rods are pressed into the piston spider, where they are held very tightly and are not subject to hammer action. as at the crosshead end.

Fig. 77 shows a good way of securing the piston rod to the piston. The rod has a large collar against which the piston spider is pressed. Liberal fillets should be turned on both sides of the collar. The end of the rod is threaded and has a steel nut screwed on, which is let into the piston. This makes the face even without any projections. The nut is set up tight and secured by a lockscrew.

Other ways of holding the piston on the rod, frequently used by engine builders, are shown in Figs. 78 to 82. Fig. 78 shows the rod slightly reduced in diameter, pressed into the piston and the end riveted. Fig. 79 shows the same construction with an additional cotter pin driven through; this weakens the rod and is open to the same objections as the key and hole at the crosshead end. If the rod is pressed in solid the cotter is of no use, but if it is not a perfect press fit the hole weakens it so much that there is danger of a fracture. A number of rods have failed at this point and caused much damage. Fig.

80 is an improvement on Fig. 78. The collar on the rod is an excellent thing, but, of course, there is the uncertainty of the press fit. Figs. 81 and 82 are used frequently. Fig. 81 shows a taper rod with a thread and nut at the end, and Fig. 82 has a straight fit with a collar at one end and thread and nut at the other. Both of these types will hold if the rods are pressed in tight, but the disadvantage is that the large nut projects and causes a



FIGS. 78, 79, 80, 81 and 82.
Piston rod fastenings in piston.

continuous loss of steam, for the reason that a cavity for the nut must be provided in the back cylinder head, which increases the clearance space and also the surface on which steam will condense.

Troublesome parts of a piston are the follower bolts, which deserve thorough consideration. For these bolts, or studs, the best grade of Norway iron or its equal should be used; it should be carefully tested for tensile strength and elongation. Mild steel or, worse, high-carbon steel should not be used.

A much-approved follower-bolt construction is shown in Fig. 83. The bolts are made to go through the piston, one end is screwed tight into the piston spider against a collar on the stud, and the end is riveted over to hold the bolt. The shank has play in the hole to give the bolt a chance to bend if not perfectly square with the follower. A nut holds the follower onto the piston. This nut is important, for if one comes off there is usually some damage done, either to the piston, the back head or to the exhaust valve and its gear. Some engineers prick-punch the nuts and studs to keep the nuts from backing off; others put in split pins—dangerous things if not properly secured in the holes. If the nuts are not a good fit on the bolts, so that they have to be screwed on all the way with a socket wrench, they cause the engineer a lot of worry. The bolts and nuts should be given the most rigid inspection and replaced if not perfect.

Follower bolts of different designs are shown in Figs. 84 to 86. Figs. 84 and 85 are similar, the only difference being that the studs in Fig. 84 are provided with a collar and, therefore, cannot back out or become loose as long as the follower is in place. The only thing that can come off in the design shown in Fig. 84 is the nut. Fig. 85 shows a stud screwed tightly into the piston, with a nut to hold the follower. The disadvantage of this is that the stud may come out, since there is nothing except the tight fit in the tapped hole to hold it in place. In Fig. 86 a tapbolt with a long thread is used—not such a bad construction in itself if the bolt is made a close fit in the tapped hole and if the thread is perfect, but often this is not the case and then there is trouble. Besides, every time the follower is taken off bolt and hole are exposed to wear, and if this is done often the bolts will get loose and give trouble.

Much thought has been given to improvements on follower bolts, though it seems a simple thing to design some device that will hold a bolt securely in its place. But there always appears to be some drawback. This

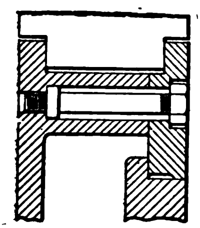


FIG. 83.

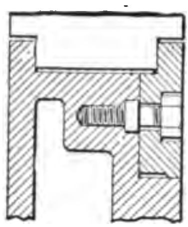


FIG. 84.

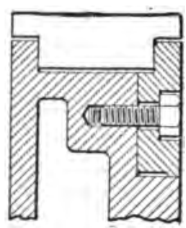


FIG. 86.

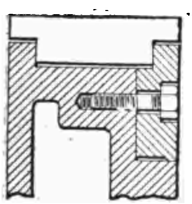


FIG. 85.

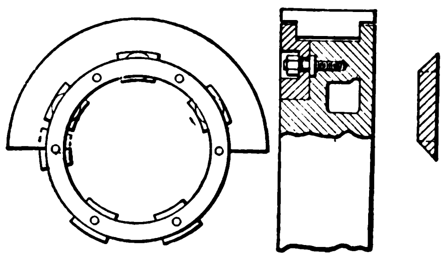


FIG. 87.

Piston rod follower fastenings

is why some engineers insist on a piston without junk ring, follower or bolts. If the piston is made long and lubrication is ample, it may give good results for a while, but eventually it will wear out of center and, not having any provision for adjustment, will give trouble; that is, of course, on horizontal engines. Pistons on vertical engines are not subject to wear and do not need any central adjustment.

An excellent but expensive method of securing follower bolts and nuts is shown in Fig. 87. It consists of a steel ring which is shown in cross-section. A dovetailed groove to correspond with the ring is turned into the face of the follower, the edges of the ring are made square in a number of places, and the groove in the follower is chipped out in the same number of spots, to register with the projecting parts of the ring. This will allow the ring to be inserted in the groove. It can then be turned around into such a position that the narrow parts will be over the follower bolts. A number of countersunk machine screws hold the ring in place. The upper part of the elevation in Fig. 87 shows the ring in position in the groove of the follower, while the lower part shows certain parts cut away at the edges. A number of engines on which the follower bolts gave considerable trouble were provided with rings as described.

Figs. 88 to 91 show different designs of junk rings for pistons. Fig. 88 shows the most approved way of arranging the junk ring, which is made in two parts—one turned to hold the packing ring and the other to fit into a recess in the first. The follower and piston hold the two parts of the junk ring firmly together. Adjustment is made by means of set screws of tough bronze, with check nuts. The face of the two rings is lined with red metal strips hammered into dovetailed grooves and turned flush with the outside of the rings. This construction allows the removal and inspection of the packing ring by simply taking off the follower and the outer half of the junk ring; neither the adjusting screws nor the inner half of the junk ring have to be disturbed. Fig. 89 shows a modification of Fig. 88. The junk ring is made in one piece. If the packing ring has to be taken out and examined, the

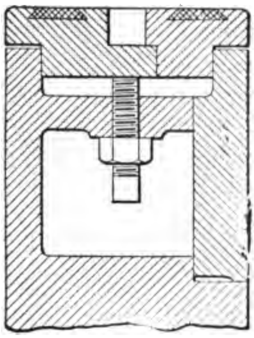


FIG. 88.

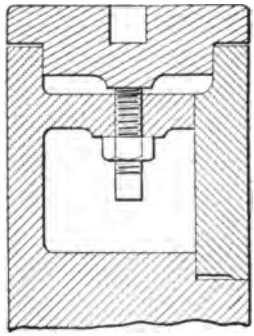


FIG. 89.

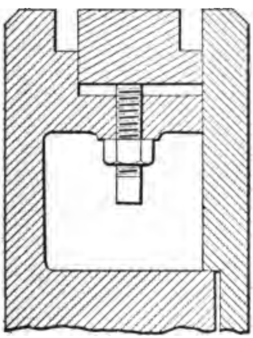


FIG. 90.

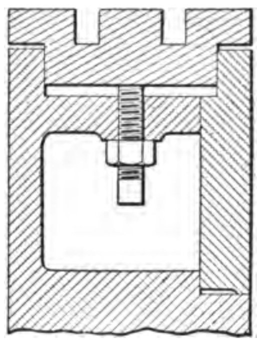


FIG. 91.

Forms of junk rings.

adjusting screws must be loosened and the whole junk ring removed from the cylinder. In Fig. 90 the junk ring covers only part of the piston, so that the latter is partly supported on its own rim and also on the follower. As the piston wears, the junk ring will have to be adjusted, and from that time on the weight of the piston will be supported by the much-reduced face of the junk ring. In this arrangement there are two packing rings used. The disadvantage is that if the second packing ring has to be examined or renewed the junk ring has to be removed. The construction is old and cannot be recommended. Fig. 91 shows a solid junk ring with two packing rings. All the objections to the design of Fig. 89 hold good in this case. There are many opinions about the design of the packing ring or rings, and there is a variety of them in use. It would seem that two rings in a piston would be better and more economical in the use of steam than one, but practice shows this is not true. If the time taken to turn two grooves and make two rings is spent on one groove and one ring making a perfect fit with about $\frac{2}{1000}$ in. clearance on the sides, one ring will be the more satisfactory. On horizontal engines the junk ring bears on the bottom half and it may be assumed that this part will be steam-tight, if properly lubricated. The only leak, then, that can occur is on the upper half; therefore, if the packing ring is made to fit well on the sides of the groove, so that no steam can get under the ring, all that is required to make it bear against the upper half of the cylinder is a slight pressure upward, and it appears that a snap ring will best perform this function, with the joint in the ring at the bottom. The ring may have the inner and outer surfaces turned concentric or eccentric and should be fitted with a certain amount of spring to make it exert a pressure of 2 to 3 lbs. against the cylinder walls. The fit all around must be perfect, which means that it should be turned to the exact size of the cylinder after the joint has been made.

A simple keeper, as shown in Fig. 92, should be used. The joint in the ring is made by letting the two ends overlap. A strip of bronze is riveted to one end of the ring. If this strip is well fitted no steam will escape

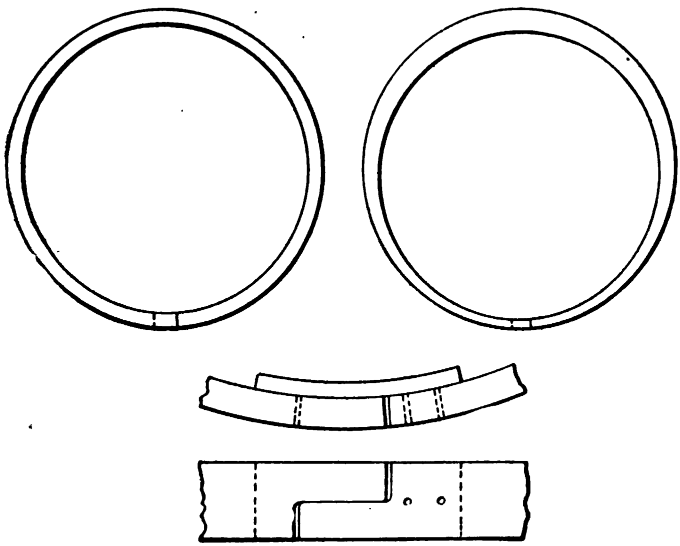


FIG. 92.—A simple keeper.

or get back of the ring and force it against the cylinder wall. Snap rings of this kind may be used with good results up to 30 in. diameter of cylinder. For larger sizes the ring may be made in two or more parts, using bronze keepers, as shown in Fig. 93, which in this form have a small projection at the back, over which a spiral spring slips. The object of this is to hold the parts of the sectional ring against the cylinder wall. Figs. 94 and 95 show the packing ring held out by steel springs.

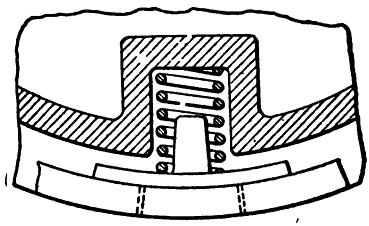


FIG. 93.

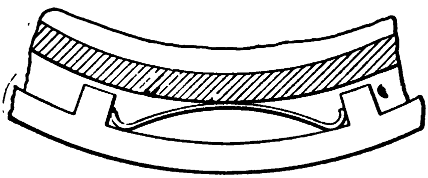


FIG. 94.

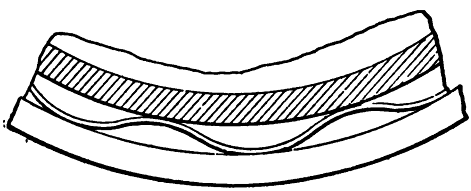


FIG. 95.
Piston ring springs.

This is not considered good practice, as the tempered springs will break sometimes and the pieces work their way out and cut the cylinder.

CHAPTER VI

FRAMES

Guides must be in line with the cylinder. Bored guides have advantages over other types. Girder frames only for light work. Pillow blocks must be strong and well supported. Heavy duty frame for hard service should be in one piece. Two-piece frames are apt to give trouble. Unsupported guides will deflect. Frames must be well supported on the foundation. Oil should drain into a reservoir and be filtered. Oil shields and guards.

Bored guides are the standard. Fig. 96 shows this type. The trouble with the V and the flat guides, shown in Figs. 97 and 98, respectively, is that it is almost impossible to get them in line with the bore of the cylinder, which

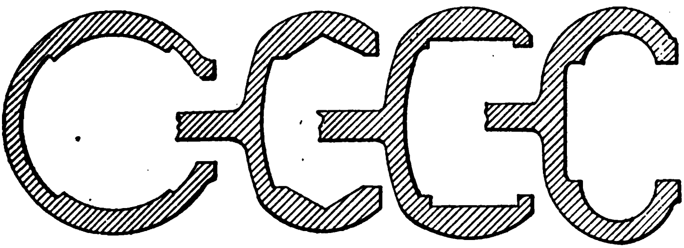


Fig. 96. Fig. 97. Fig. 98. Fig. 99.

Various types of engine guides.

is essential in a well-running engine. The only rational way to attain this is to run a boring bar through and do the facing of the end for the cylinder head and the boring of the guides at the same setting; this will insure perfect alignment, a thing which cannot be accomplished with the other kind of guides.

An advantage of the bored guides is that the crosshead can accommodate itself to the connecting-rod and crank-pin. If for some reason the crankshaft should get out of line, perhaps through unequal wear of the main and outer bearings or a settling of the foundation, the bored guides will permit the crosshead to roll sideways without throwing any extra strain on the pins or the connecting-rod, while the V or the flat guides will make the crosshead shoes bind on the sides and run hot. Another good feature is that with bored guides the lubrication seems to be more effective than with the other two styles. The oil has a tendency to spread evenly over the lower guide when struck by the cylindrically shaped crosshead shoe. On the V guides it will run toward the center groove where the crosshead shoe cannot touch it, and on the flat guides it will spread over one side only and leave the other dry unless the guide is level. Very few crossheads used for the V or the flat guides can be removed without taking off at least one of the shoes; frequently both of them have to come off, and the engineer has his hands full when he undertakes to do the job. With the old-style shoes that lap over both ends of the crosshead and have a wedge for adjustment inside, it is even necessary to remove the connecting-rod. All this trouble is avoided with the bored guides, where the crosshead can be rolled around and taken out through the opening in the side. A very antiquated style is shown in Fig. 99. The bearing surface is milled in half-moon shape to a small radius. These are even worse than the V-shaped or the flat style, since it is almost impossible to make any correction by filing or scraping if they are not parallel and central.

The object of the frame of an engine is evidently to counteract the forces transmitted from the cylinder through the piston, piston rod, crosshead, connecting-rod and crank to the shaft and main bearing, and also to prevent the engine from moving on the foundation. With this in view we can readily see that the girder frame should be used only for light work. The tendency is to overload an engine, either from a mistaken standpoint of steam economy or from a desire to increase the output without going to the expense of adding to the equipment. To do this on a girder frame is a rather hazardous undertaking

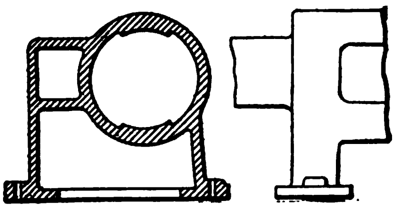


FIG. 100.—Upper and lower guides rigidly connected.

and may result in disaster, unless the frame is built on certain approved lines. As explained previously, the girder frame should have bored guides, and it would be well if the girder part could be of box section instead of the conventional I-beam section. The slide pedestal should be cast onto the frame, not bolted on, and the upper and lower guides should be rigidly connected, as shown in Fig. 100. If the end of the guide barrel has no support on the foundation, as, for instance, in the original girder frames made by George H. Corliss, there is quite a noticeable deflection every time the crank turns over its upper or lower center. Of course the bolting on of a support is only a convenience for engine builders, to make the frames do for right- or left-hand engines. Another convenience which manufacturers introduced years ago, and which is still a source of trouble to the engineer, is the bolted-on main pillow block. Bolts will stretch and nuts will get loose in spite of all precautions, which, of course, cannot happen in this particular instance if the frame and main-pillow block are cast together.

The design of a pillow block needs some serious attention. If made, as shown in Fig. 101, there will be a cer-

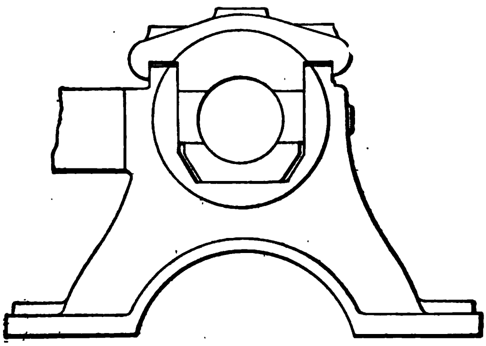


FIG. 101.—Improper pillow block design.

tain amount of deflection in the center, which may result in fracture. Some of the most valuable metal has been cut away, supposedly under the impression that a graceful arch would best answer the purpose of sustaining the weight of the shaft, flywheel and crank. An architectural design rarely meets the requirements of engine practice, where the forces constantly change in magnitude as well as in direction. A dead load is altogether different from the strain caused by a revolving flywheel and the reciprocating parts of an engine, with all the attendant forces due to the pressure on the piston. Beautiful lines and curves are of little value to the engineer—strength and rigidity are what he expects of an engine frame. The late Prof. Sweet's "straight line," backed by a lot of solid metal, is vastly superior to elegant curves and fanciful shapes on engine work.

Fig. 102 shows a good design of main pillow block. The

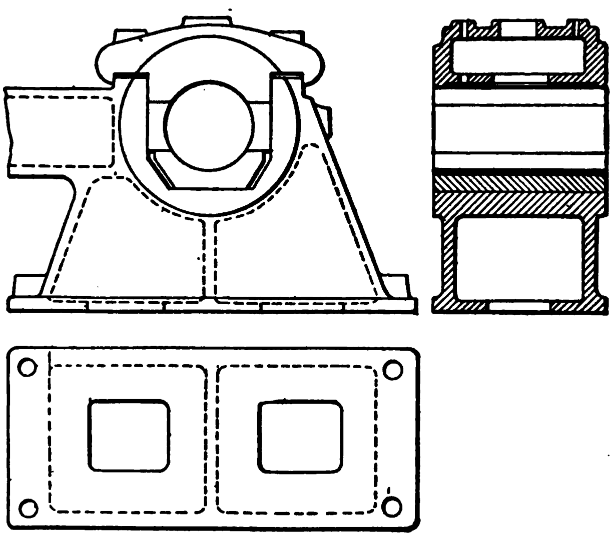


FIG. 102.—Good pillow block design.

base has full bearing on the foundation, and the shaft is supported in the most natural and direct way. There are just sufficient openings in the base for removing the cores, otherwise it is one continuous surface. This is a substantial construction, and if designed in the proper proportions it will give satisfaction. There is no attempt made to save expense by sacrificing strength, as in the pillow blocks shown in cross-section in Figs. 103 and 104.

Fig. 103 illustrates a case of insufficient support at the base line and is contrary to all sound principles. There are no return flanges provided, consequently it is impossible to use grouting on this construction. The object of this design is to save a few dollars by letting the inside of the pattern leave its own core. Fig. 104 is another design from which trouble may be expected. It is made of rib

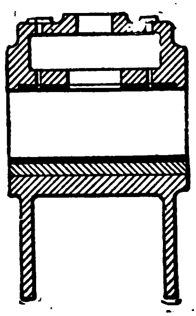


FIG. 103.—Insufficient support of pillow block at base line.

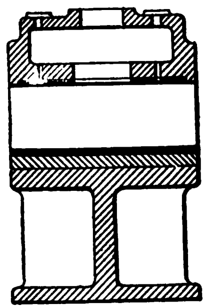


FIG. 104.—Ribsection shown is weaker than box section.

section with the idea of saving core work, the base is broad and long, but rib sections do not compare in strength with box sections; they seem to have a natural tendency to develop cracks, probably owing to shrinkage strains.

For heavy, continuous service an engine should be provided with a so-called heavy-duty frame as shown in Fig. 105, which is made in one casting with a wide continuous bearing on the foundation. Guide barrel and main pedestal are in one piece. In this one-piece design it is possible to counteract all strains in the most direct way and there are no sharp breaks in the lines, or offsets with sharp corners where cracks could develop. The argument that a frame of this kind is subject to dangerous shrinkage strains cannot be maintained, for the casting can contract freely in the mold in all directions. Another advantage is that it requires little machining and fitting and is easy to line up in erecting if it is once fitted right in the shop, which is not always the case with the two-piece frame shown in Fig. 106. On the latter design the frame and

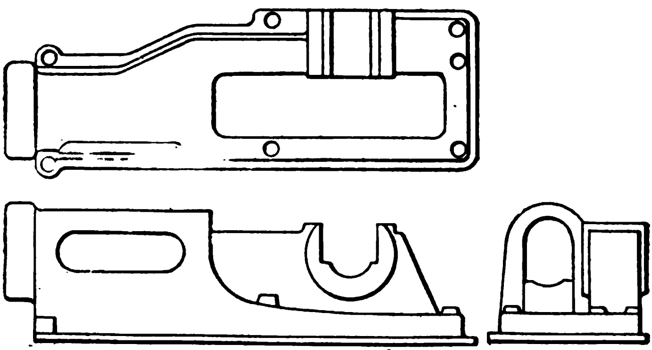


FIG. 105.—One piece heavy-duty frame.

guide castings are machined separately and bolted together. In shipping, the two pieces are taken apart again and the chances are that there is more or less trouble in lining up when the engine is erected, as many an erecting engineer has found out to his sorrow. The joint between the two pieces is the weak spot; tap-bolts are mostly used to hold the two parts together and on some designs, even links are shrunk in, which is, of course, open to severe criticism.

Guides that are not supported on the foundation, as shown in Fig. 107 are not fit for heavy work. There is always a certain amount of deflection in them, and often the lower crosshead shoes give trouble on account of this—

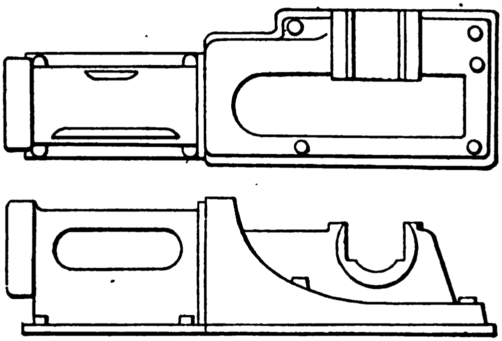


FIG. 106.—Two-piece frame.

a puzzle to the engineer, who wonders what can be the matter with the crosshead that makes the lower shoe and guide run hot, and why they require such a lot of oil.

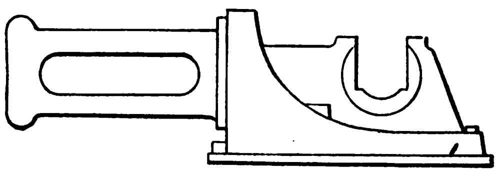


FIG. 107.—Insufficient support for guides.

Even if a foot is bolted on under the guide, as shown in Fig. 108, the design is only an excuse for a heavy-duty frame and does not compare in strength and rigidity with the one shown in Fig. 105. For extremely heavy work the bottom of the frame should be a continuous plate with enough openings for removing the cores, but for less strenuous work it will be sufficient if a broad flange is run around the outside, with a rib turned up to form an

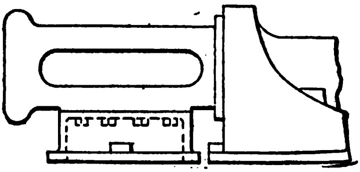


FIG. 108.—Pedestal under guide.

oil channel, as in Fig. 109. This is far superior to the method shown in Fig. 110, where the edge at the bottom is reinforced by a narrow strip, which does not afford a good bearing on the foundation and will not keep oil from running on the floor if any gets on the frame. An oil

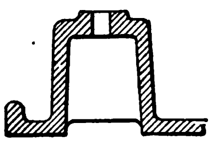


FIG. 109.—Broad flange forming oil channel.

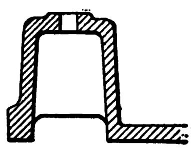


FIG. 110.—A narrow strip does not afford a good bearing on the foundation.

channel all around the frame is one of the things that a modern engine should be provided with. If it is not, some oil is bound to get on the floor and, worse, on the foundation, where it will destroy the grouting and weaken the concrete.

Oil used for lubrication should be free from grit and dirt; therefore, it is best to filter all of it, even the new

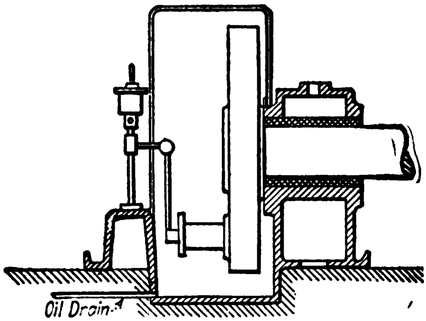


FIG. 111.—Crankpin section.

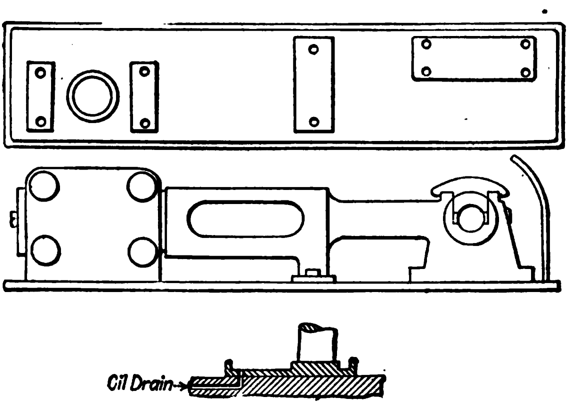


FIG. 112.—Cast-iron sole-plate under frame.

supply. Filtered oil is often better than the original article, since the volatile parts have been eliminated in the filtering process. One of the advantages of the heavy-duty frame is that it has a bottom cast in the crank pit and oil used on the guides, crosshead, crankpins and main bearing can be made to drain into this pit and from there to a tank or direct to a filter. Fig. 111 shows a cross-section through the crank pit at the main bearing. With the girder frame matters are different. It is open on all sides and has no provision for catching oil. The common practice is to collect in tin pans the oil that is thrown off. It is almost impossible to keep an engine room clean with these contrivances, which will begin to leak in a short time or are likely to be upset, making the floor slippery and nasty. A much better way is to provide a continuous

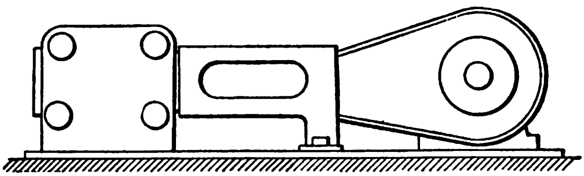


FIG. 113.—Oil guard for high speed engine.

cast-iron sole plate under the whole girder frame, as shown in Fig. 112. The plate may be made in one piece or in two bolted together, according to the size of the engine, with a separate plate for the outer bearing. The outer edge of the plate should have a bead running all around it, and if there are any holes, as, for instance, under the cylinder for the exhaust pipe, they should also have beads around them to prevent oil from running through. The plate should slope from all sides toward the crank or some other convenient point, and the oil should be drained off. A simple oil shield for the crank, as in Fig. 112, is generally sufficient for a slow-running engine, but if the speed is over 100 r.p.m. or the piston speed over 600 ft. per minute, the connecting-rod and crank should be inclosed by an oil guard, as in Fig. 113. The combination of the continuous sole plate and this kind of oil guard can be recommended; it will pay for itself in a short time.

CHAPTER VII

BEARINGS

Main-bearings in four parts. Quarter boxes must be adjustable. Lower box removable. Wedge adjustment. Chain oilers. Water must not be used on a hot bearing. Outer bearing must be well lubricated. Pressure on bearings to be within certain limits. Diagram for calculating the pressure on bearings. Undesirable features of bearings on old designs.

OF main-bearing designs there is a great variety, but the one using two quarter-boxes, an upper and lower shell and a cap which fits over the jaws of the pillow block,

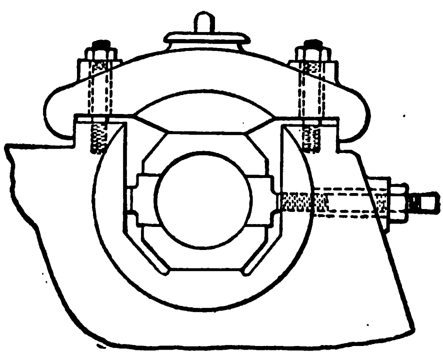


FIG. 114.—Common main bearing.

seems to be the accepted standard. Fig. 114 shows an arrangement that we find in many engines. Its disadvantage is that it has screw adjustment for the outer quarter-box only; if the opposite quarter-box wears, shims will have to be used on that side. The jaws should be made wide enough to let the bottom box be rolled out by lifting the shaft. This is a very important feature which is not carried out in some engines. If the lower box has to be removed on the eccentric side, there is usually more or less trouble.

For ordinary factories a main bearing like Fig. 114 will be satisfactory, but where the work is heavy and continuous, as in rolling mills and for large direct-connected

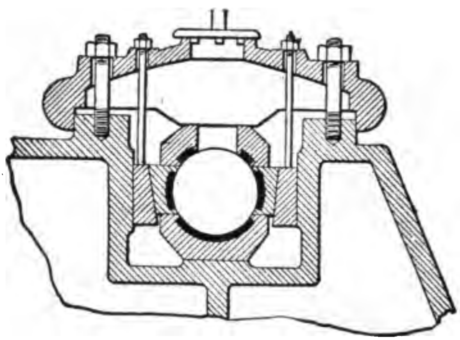


FIG. 115.—Main bearing adapted for heavy service.

engines, the one shown in Fig. 115 will give better results. In this design both quarter-boxes are adjusted by means of wedges. The wedges should always have full bearing on the quarter-box, to prevent the latter from tilting and binding on the shaft. Many main bearings run hot and give trouble on account of the wedges being too short, as shown in Fig. 116, in which case the shaft in bearing against the upper corner will throw the lower edge of the quarter-box inward—in other words it will make the quarter-box act as a lever.

Fig. 117 illustrates a bearing that is well adapted for direct-connected engines; it has about all the refinements that a main bearing needs. The quarter-boxes are taken up by wedges. The lower box is made cylindrical, and it can even be made with a spherical seat if desired. Cylindrical and spherical shells can be removed by simply relieving them of the weight of the shaft; there is no need to take the generator apart, which must be done if a flat-bottomed lower box has to be taken out. The bearing is provided with chain oilers, which will carry a good supply from the reservoir over the shaft, assuming, of course, that the chains are running. It is not wise to depend on chain oilers entirely; if used in connection with a gravity oiling system, they are a convenience to the engineer. The oil in the reservoir must be renewed from time to time and all sediment removed. If this is neglected, a bearing may run hot in spite of the chain oilers.

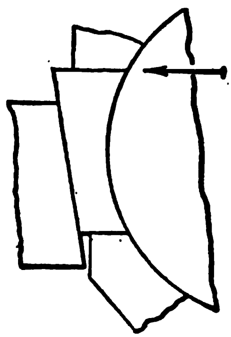


FIG. 116.—Wedges are too short for the quarter box.

If a bearing does run hot, one of the worst things that can be done is to turn water on it; water always contains more or less grit and dirt unless it is distilled, and it will spoil a bearing. If grit of any kind once gets into a bearing, it will be found hard to remove. A hot bearing should be treated with plenty of high-grade oil, cylinder oil will help some, but, of course, if it gets into a bearing, it is difficult to get it out again. There is

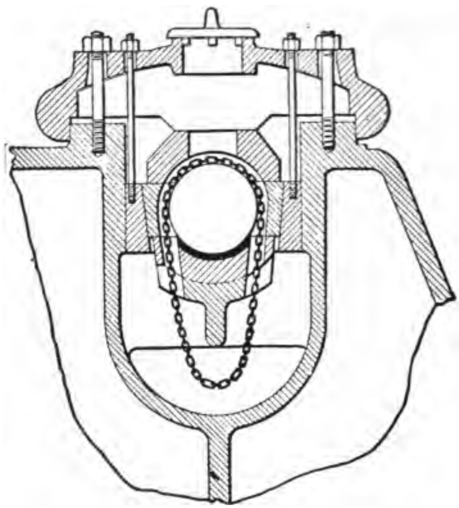


FIG. 117.—Main bearing for high-speed engines.

no cure for a hot bearing except to find and remove the cause.

The outer bearing often gives more trouble than the main bearing, because the shaft turns always in the same position, while in the main bearing it is moved forward and backward, owing to the push and pull of the connecting-rod. In fact, the pressures vary constantly in accord with the forces acting on the crankpin; therefore, the outer bearing must be provided with ample means for lubrication and should be watched very closely on a new engine. It is best to use a construction similar to the main bearing. Quarter-boxes are not absolutely necessary, but a removable-bottom box is most desirable. Fig. 118 shows such an arrangement. It also shows a chain-oiler, which is of more use on an outer bearing than on a main bearing. The cap must be provided with a large

FIG. 118.—Good type of outer bearing.

opening, enabling the engineer to examine shaft and oiler without difficulty. A copious supply of oil is to be recommended.

Fig. 119 shows an outer bearing made in four parts. The quarter-boxes can be adjusted by means of set-screws—a convenient way, since there is hardly any side strain in this case. There are two oil shields bolted to the bearing—one on the inner and the other on the outer side, which serve the double purpose of holding the boxes in place and collecting the oil that runs off. The outer shield has a hole in the center to feel the shaft. A grooved ring is provided on the shaft inside of the inner shield; the ring is shrunk on, its function being to keep oil from creeping along the shaft. If necessary a wiper may be attached to it.

If a bearing is large enough and well lubricated it should run for years without being rebabbitted. To attain this the pressure must not exceed 100 lbs. per square

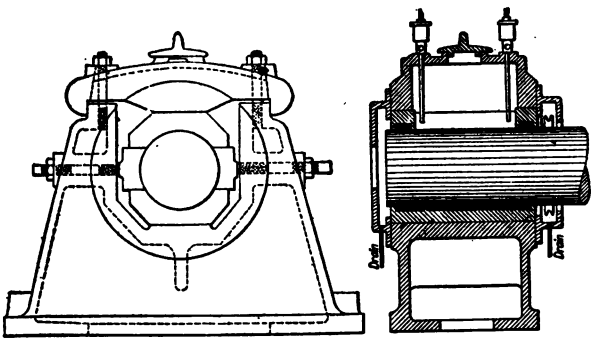


FIG. 119.—An outboard bearing of excellent design.

inch of projected area. Any pressure over 130 lbs. per square inch is dangerous and liable to heat the bearing, even with a good supply of oil. On the main bearing it is not so important to take the steam pressure on the piston into account, as the weight of the crank, shaft, flywheel, armature, etc., because the dead weight of these parts is always acting in the same direction, while the pressure, due to the force of the steam, acts alternately in opposite directions, giving the oil a chance to work its way between quarter-boxes and shaft. The lower shells of main and outer bearing are the parts exposed to a continuous grind that will give trouble if overloaded. The old rule, to make the diameter of the crankshaft equal to one-half the diameter of the piston and its length equal to the same, gave good results for ordinary belt or rope drives, but for rolling mills, electric light and power plants and other installations where very heavy flywheels are required, this rule is deficient and the size of the bearing must be carefully considered. To determine approximately the pressures on main and outer bearings, it is well to lay down a simple diagram, as shown in Fig. 120, and to ascertain the reactions A and B. Without going into any refinements the following calculation will give a pretty good idea of the pressures one has to deal with on a single-cylinder engine.

Let

F = Weight of flywheel;
G = Weight of armature;
S = Weight of shaft;
C = Weight of crank;
A = Reaction of main bearing;
B = Reaction of outer bearing;

Then

$$A=\frac{F\times b}{e}+\frac{G\times d}{e}+\tfrac{1}{2}S+C$$

$$B=\frac{F\times a}{e}+\frac{G\times c}{e}+\tfrac{1}{2}S.$$

The lower-case letters in the formula are taken from Fig. 120. These formulas, of course, are not quite correct, but they will answer for all practical purposes. To get the pressure per square inch *A* and *B* must be divided by the projected area of the respective bearings.

Some of the older engines are provided with main bearings which are entirely unfit for present conditions. Fig. 121 shows one in which the cap does not hook over the jaws; the full steam pressure carried on the outstroke from the piston through the intervening parts to the shaft and bearing has to be sustained by the end of the frame without any support from the cap. The bending strain on the outer jaw is, therefore, considerable, due to the leverage on which the pressure acts. If the wedges

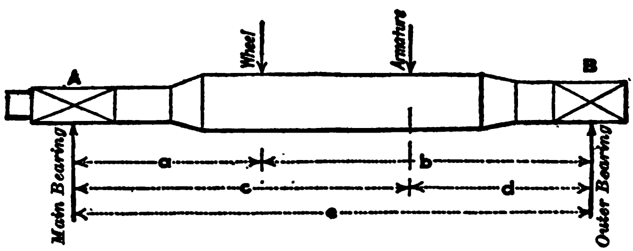


FIG. 120.—Diagram to assist in calculating pressures on bearings.

do not bear properly on the quarter-box and frame, but only on the upper part, the pillow block is liable to spring and may develop a crack or break off. A small amount of metal in the form of lips on both sides of the pillow-block cap with a tight grip over the jaws would be a great improvement. Another inferior feature of the design are the slender wedges, two on each side, which hold the quarter-boxes in place, if properly designed they should extend over the full length of the bearing. There is no loose bottom box, the babbitt is simply poured into a recess in the frame; if the bearing has to be rebabbitted the shaft with everything on it has to be jacked up sufficiently to remove the old lining, pour the new metal and

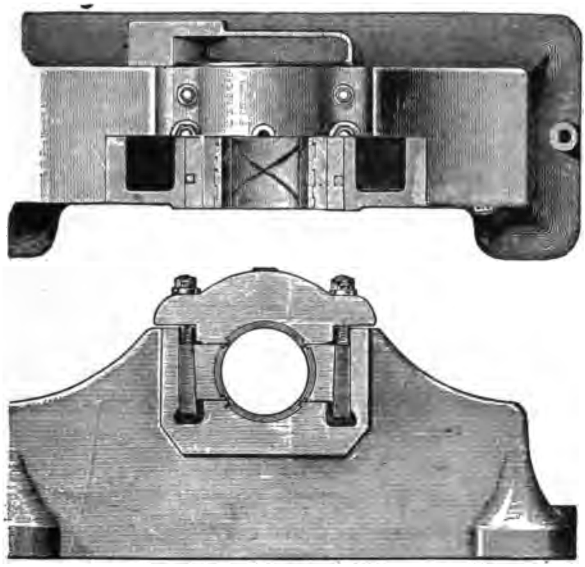


FIG. 121.—Undesirable mainshaft bearing.

scrape the bearing. On large engines this is a hard and tedious job.

CHAPTER VIII

CONNECTING-RODS

Gib and key ends. Strap end rods. Inside adjustment increases distance between centers. Wedge adjustment. Marine end rods are not a success on stationary engines. Hatchet and forked rods have their drawbacks. Solid end rod for continuous service.

Two of the older designs of connecting-rod ends are shown in Figs. 122 and 123. Rod ends like Fig. 122, with gibs and key, were used first. They answered the purpose for slow speeds, say 60 or 65 r.p.m.; with increased speeds the gibs gave trouble and were abandoned for through bolts like Fig. 123. Many rods of this kind are still in use. The trouble with them is that the keys will hammer into the boxes and have to be taken up frequently. These strap-end rods were very convenient when forgings were made of wrought iron welded together from "selected scrap"; it was easier in those days to make the rods in several pieces than in one. With the advent of open-hearth steel the built-up rod became obsolete and the solid-end rod, forged in one piece from a billet, made its appearance. The strap rod, shown in Fig. 124, is disappearing; no modern engine builder would make one except for a special occasion. On rods of this kind both keys are on the inside. As the boxes wear and the keys are taken up, the distance between centers gradually increases and the consequence is that the clearance in the cylinder begins to vary. On old engines this has to be watched closely, otherwise there may be trouble with the piston striking the back head. To keep the distance between centers about the same, shims are put between the boxes and the straps, an expedient which can not be recommended.

On engines where the crosshead pin cannot be removed, or which have a center crank, the connecting-rod must

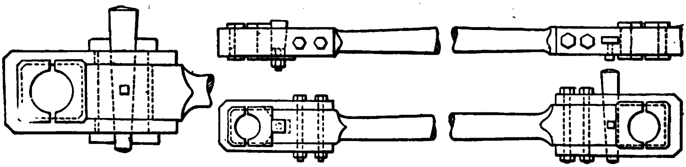


FIG. 122. FIG. 124.

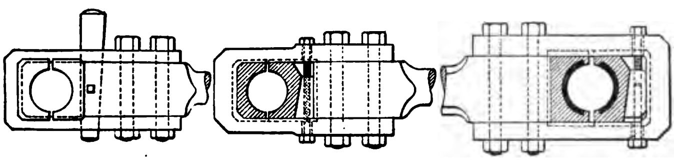


FIG. 123. FIG. 125. FIG. 126.

FIG. 122.—Connecting-rod end with gib and key.
FIG. 123.—Connecting-rod end with key and bolts.
FIG. 124.—Common strap end connecting-rod.
FIGS. 125, 126.—Strap connecting-rod ends with wedges and bolts.

be made so that it can be taken apart, and under such conditions the rod ends shown in Figs. 125 and 126 can be used to advantage, the former for the crosshead end and the latter for the crank end. The adjustment is made by means of wedges held in place by tapbolts. The wedge at the crank end is placed on the outside and the one at the crosshead end on the inside, so that any adjustment for wear will leave the distance between the centers of boxes practically constant. The marine end shown in Fig. 127 is sometimes used on the crankpin, but with indifferent success; it is very hard to adjust, especially in the larger sizes. Here again we have to do with shims, which are placed between the cap and the rod, and as the boxes wear some of them are taken out and the nuts are drawn up tight again—certainly the crudest way of adjustment that can be conceived.

There is also the hatchet rod, shown in Fig. 128, a sub-

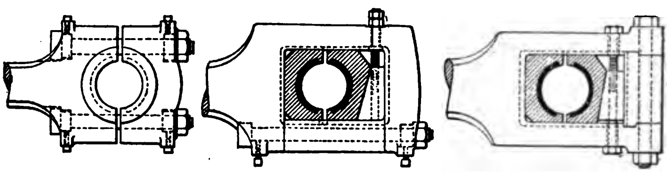


FIG. 127. FIG. 128. FIG. 129.

FIG. 127.—Marine end connecting-rod.
FIG. 128.—Hatchet rod end.
FIG. 129.—Slotted rod end.

stitute for the marine rod. The upper side is solid, but the lower is cut out so that the rod can be lifted off the crankpin by removing the large bolt and the block that fills the gap. Fig. 129 represents a forked rod which is cut through at the extreme end. The opening is closed by means of a steel block which is recessed into the two sides of the rod. A large bolt holds the ends and block together. The adjustment of these two rods is effected by wedges located near the outside of the rods. Neither the hatchet nor the forked rod finds much favor. They are cumbersome, require the highest class of workmanship and, if the blocks and bolts are not a very good fit, will give a good deal of trouble.

In an up-to-date Corliss engine the connecting-rod designs just described should not be accepted; the solid-end rod is the only one which can be recommended. There are, of course, many different designs of the latter, for each of which a number of claims of superiority are advanced. Fig. 130 shows a solid-end rod provided with boxes which, it is claimed, cannot pinch the pins. They are not split in the center in the customary way, but are slotted out on one side, into which the adjustable

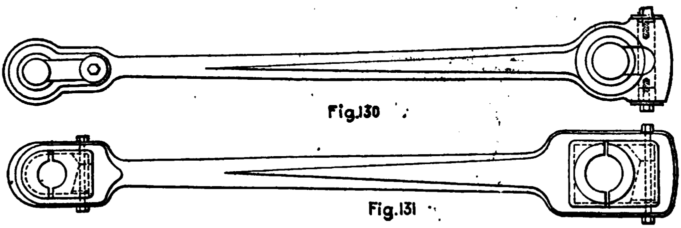


FIG. 130.—Connecting-rod with cylindrical boxes.
FIG. 131.—Ideal connecting-rod for Corliss engines.

part of the box fits. On the crosshead end the adjusting wedge is located parallel to the crosshead pin; the object of this is to make the wedge accessible outside of the crosshead, where it can be given close attention. The advantages of the rod seem to be that the boxes are cylindrical and can, therefore, be fitted easily and that most of the operations on the rod are performed by turning, boring and milling. The disadvantages lie in the long slot at the crosshead end, which is apt to spring, and in small surface cf the adjusting wedge at the crank end.

The rod shown in Fig. 131 represents what might be called the ideal one for a Corliss engine; it fills all the requirements and, on account of its simplicity, strength and reliability, has been almost universally adopted as the standard. There are no frills about this kind of rod; everything seems to have been logically developed. The rod is forged in one piece, turned in the lathe, the sides planed, and the ends slotted out and squared to receive the boxes and wedges. The surfaces that come in contact

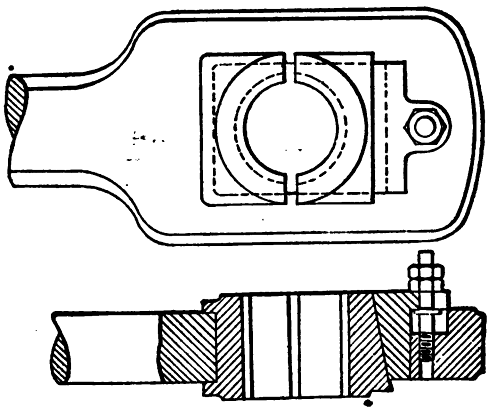


FIG. 132.—Wedge bearing full on box.

between the boxes and wedges are very large and the pressure per square inch on these surfaces is consequently much reduced. The best material for the wedges is forged steel. Cast iron is not suitable for this purpose; it is likely to break through the threaded hole and give trouble. The tapbolts must have a good fit in the wedge, but they should be loose in the rods, with at least $\frac{1}{16}$-in. play or, in the larger sizes, $\frac{1}{8}$-in. If they are made to fit tightly, there will be trouble, as they will break in a short time. Norway iron or its equivalent is the best material for the tapbolts; mild steel is likely to crystallize and break. A small fillet should be left between the shank and the head of the bolts, and sharp corners must be avoided.

It has been said that the space above the wedge for adjustment is objectionable and that the box and wedge should bear over their entire surface. In Fig. 132 an attempt is made to overcome this difficulty. The wedge is inserted from the front, it bears over the full surface of the outer box and is held in place and adjusted by means of a screw-bolt. A set-screw from underneath helps to secure the wedge; this is placed in a horizontal position instead of vertical, as in Fig. 131. This small set-screw, which is used as a check in addition to the large bolt, shows that the confidence of the makers of this kind of rod is not quite supreme as to the staying qualities of the wedge. The projecting bolt and nuts, in front, where the engineer has to feel the rod, are objectionable.

CHAPTER IX

HOOK RODS

Troublesome hook-rod designs. Some rods are liable to be thrown out of gear. Hook rods of antiquated design are lifted by hand. Reynolds' hook rod. Finders and clamps. Telescopic rods.

THERE are many different designs of hook rods—in fact, every Corliss-engine builder seems to have one of his own. Very few are entirely satisfactory; none is

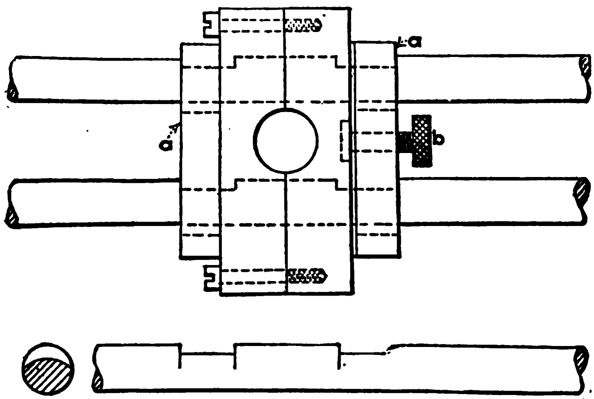


FIG. 133.—An inconvenient hook rod.

perfect. It is discouraging to note that after more than fifty years of Corliss-engine designing and building in this country, human ingenuity has been unable to overcome all the difficulties which the problem of producing a good hook rod presents. The most troublesome hook rod and its disengaging device are shown in Fig. 133. Instead of being in one rod, as most of the others, this one has two rods running parallel, both notched in two places, as shown in the detail. Two bars *aa* drop into the notches and are forced against the shoulders of the rod by tightening the set screw *b*, which has a knurled head. To disengage the rod from the hook block, screw *b* is loosened and the bars *aa* are lifted out of the notches.

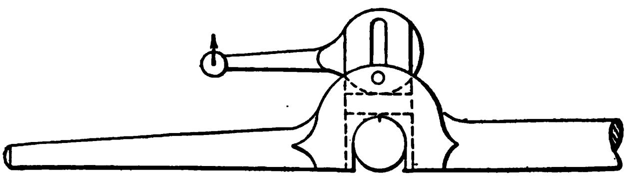


FIG. 134.—Hook rod with lifting lever.

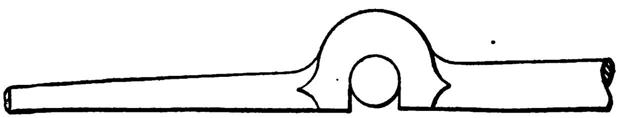


FIG. 135.—Common hook rod.

In throwing the rods into gear again, the bars must be moved close up to the block and secured in the notches—the most awkward thing imaginable and dangerous to the fingers of the attendant. Anyone who has to handle this kind of device every day and does not get his fingers nipped once in a while is lucky.

Figs. 134 and 135 represent two antiquated designs of hook rods. The difference between the two is, that the one shown in Fig. 135 has to be lifted out by hand and must be held by the operator or by slipping a ring on a chain over the end, while the one shown in Fig. 134 is lifted by moving the lever over in the direction of the arrow, thus throwing a small gib in position, which will make the rod slide over the hook pin. No provision is made to hold these rods on the pin except by their own weight; they are liable to be thrown out of gear and give trouble, if the valve gear begins to work a little harder than usual or if the load increases suddenly. To remedy this a dovetailed slide is arranged on the under

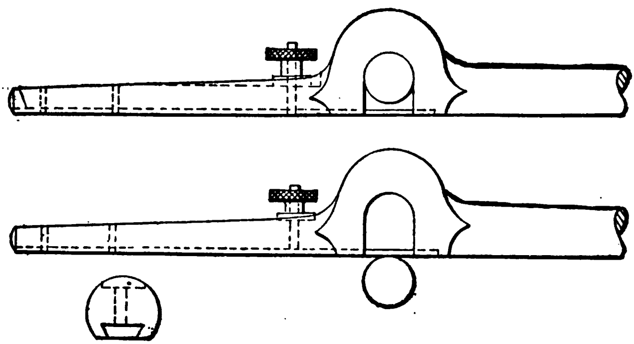


FIG. 136.—Hook rod with dovetailed slide.

side of the rod shown in Fig. 136. The slide answers the double purpose of keeping the rod in place and letting it slide forward and backward over the pin when lifted out. The rod has to be lifted by hand.

To avoid the lifting of the hook rod has been the aim of many designers, most prominent among them the late Edwin Reynolds, of Milwaukee, to whom the device shown in Fig. 137 is credited. The object of the different designs is to let the rod slide through a block engaging and disengaging it at will in a certain place. In Mr.

Reynolds' device a casting A is bolted to the wristplate and bored out to receive the block B, in which is located the pin C, having a handle D fastened to the outer end. The hook rod E runs through holes in A and B, holding them together. The pin C has a shoulder on which a spiral spring rests, forcing the taper end of C into a corresponding hole in rod E. To disengage the rod and block, D is turned around until a small pin strikes a stop, when C

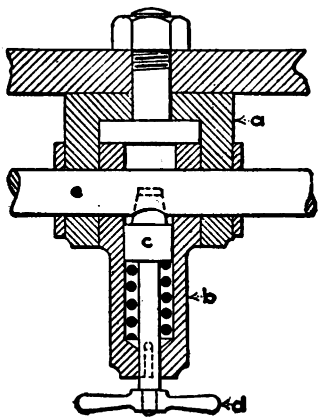


FIG. 137.—Reynolds' hook rod.

can be pulled back, the neck of B having a slot, through which the small pin passes. When the pin gets on the outside, D is turned about one-quarter of a turn, which locks C. To engage the rod again, D is turned back so that the pin can slip through the slot, when C will be made to find the taper hole in E by moving the wristplate forward and backward. To lock the mechanism the handle D is turned ahead till C is tight in the rod E. It was soon demonstrated that this device would do for light work only; on heavy work the force applied to the taper pin was not sufficient to hold the hook rod tight. To remedy the trouble the arrangement shown in Fig. 138 was adopted, in which pin *C* acts only as a finder, while the screw *F* secures the rod. Two operations are required to throw the rod in and out of gear, and it is rather confusing to the engineer to remember which of the two handles he has to turn first.

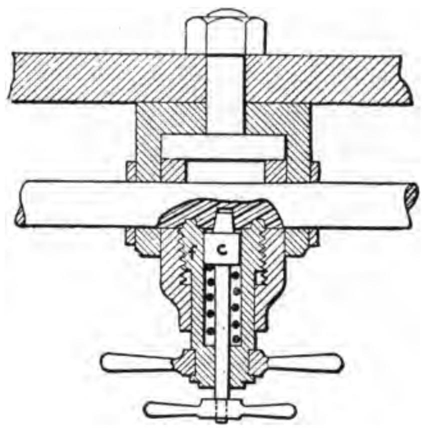


FIG. 138.—Locking device for heavy engines.

Fig. 139 shows a modification of the last-described disengaging device. The number of parts has been reduced; it has the finder and the screw to tighten the rod, but there is only one handle and one-half turn in one direction or the other will release or fasten the hook rod. This device fills all requirements except that of taking up the wear in the wristplate. However, it will last for years with proper attention and adequate lubrication.

The two devices shown in Figs. 140 and 141 use a finder to locate the rod in the required position, but to secure

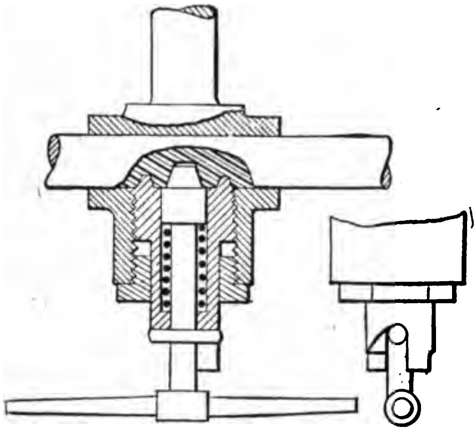


FIG. 139.—Locking device with one handle.

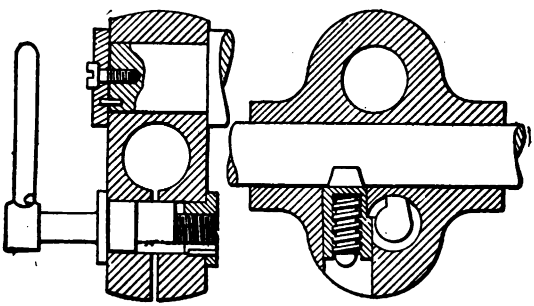


FIG. 140.—Hook rod with clamping device and finder.

it they draw the hook block, which is split half way through for that purpose, together by means of a handle and screw and clamp the rod. In Fig. 140 the performance is ingeniously carried out by simply turning the lever one way or the other, which, at the same time, works the finder and loosens or clamps the rod. In Fig. 141 finder and clamping device are separate, each working independently of the other. Therefore the engineer always has to remember which to manipulate first Devices of this kind that depend on clamping the rod are likely to give trouble in the larger sizes, where much force must be applied to the lever to get an efficient grip on

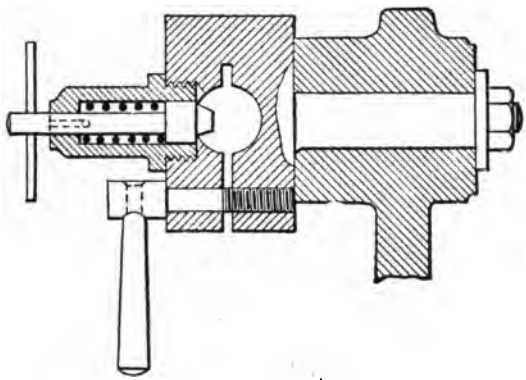


FIG. 141.—The clamping device and finder are separately operated.

the rod. To insure a good hold, a piece of pipe or even a hammer is often used to force the lever over and tighten the rod. Neither of the devices is immune from trouble; there are cases on record where the rod slipped in the block and part of the valve gear was broken.

Some hook rods are made on the telescopic principle; that is, the rods are made to slide in a sleeve provided with a disengaging device similar to those shown in Figs. 138 and 139, or they are made on the same order as shown in Fig. 142, in which a toothed clutch is used. In this device care must be taken to have the rod and sleeve engage in the right place. If the clutch catches on the

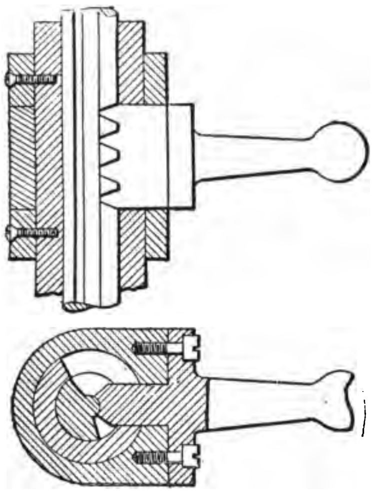


FIG. 142.—The toothed clutch.

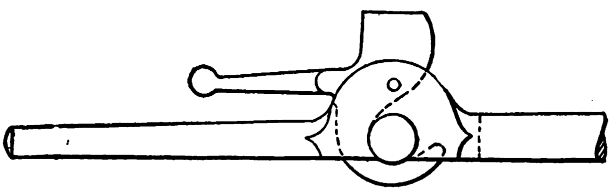


FIG. 143.—A simple and safe engaging device.

wrong tooth, the result is very likely to be a twisted valve stem or broken bonnet.

There is another device, shown in Fig. 143, that deserves mention. It is of similar style to the rod, Fig. 134, but much improved inasmuch as it will not only lift the rod out in turning the handle to the right and let it slide over the hook pin, but it will also keep the rod from jumping off the pin when thrown in gear. There are many other devices, from taper pins to hardened steel latches, but little faith can be placed in them.

CHAPTER X

DASHPOTS

Vaccum dashpot. Objections to the old open dashpot. Inverted pot. Ball and socket joint should be adjustable. Leathers in dashpots are objectionable. Single plunger pots are not satisfactory for varying loads. Differential plunger. Varying loads require frequent adjustment on dashpots. Steam dashpots are not a success. Spring dashpot.

An engineer can often perceive by the sound of the dashpots when something goes wrong with the engine. There is no such thing as a noiseless or soundless dashpot, although some builders may be found who claim that they have them.

An old-time style, still in use on many engines, is shown in Fig. 144. It represents the original vacuum dashpot, the object of which is to create a vacuum in the lower chamber by having the valve gear lift the plunger, and to let the atmospheric pressure force it down again as soon as cut-off takes place. If there is no leak, the force to push the plunger down will be constant for any lift, whether the cut-off is short or long; the pressure will be equal to the area of the plunger in square inches multiplied by the atmospheric pressure. Air in the lower chamber will weaken the action of the pot. To keep it out the plunger must fit well, it should have a number of grooves cut in which, when filled with oil, will act as packing. A small snifting valve A should be provided to relieve the pot of air that may pass below the plunger; the little ball valve, shown in detail, which may be made of a piece of hexagon steel or bronze, will answer the purpose. No oil should be allowed to accumulate in the bottom of the pot; it must be discharged either through the valve *A* or through a pet-cock *C* in

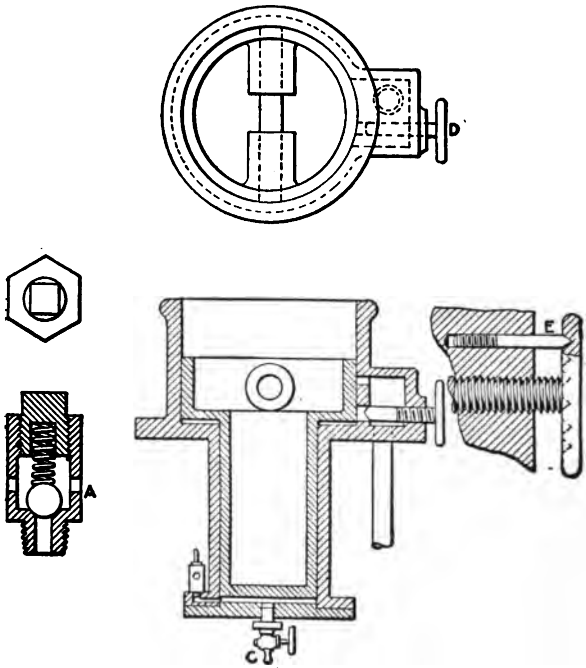


FIG. 144.—An old style dashpot.

the cover. The upper chamber and the large part of the plunger act as a cushioning device for the dashpot in the following manner: Air is drawn in by the ascending plunger through a slotted opening in the side of the pot and on the downward motion is discharged freely until the lower edge of the plunger passes the slot; from that moment cushioning takes place, the confined air being compressed and forced out through a hole near the bottom of the upper chamber, which can be opened or closed as required by the screw *D*. The little check *E*, consisting of a round pin inserted in a hole in the air chamber on the side of the pot and forced by a spiral spring into a countersunk hole drilled into the inner face of the hand-wheel, keeps the screw from turning on its own account. The principle of this pot is all right, but its action leaves much to be desired. The pot is open at the top, and being placed near the floor, it is almost impossible to keep out grit and dirt, which will wear out the pot and impair its action. The pin in the upper part of the plunger for the dashpot rod is a detriment; if the pot is not in line with the valve gear, the dashpot rod stub end will tend to force the plunger over and reduce the quick action desired for good steam distribution and a quiet-running engine. The old rule was to make the diameter of the large part of the plunger twice the size of the small part, which makes it heavy and sluggish in action.

The troubles with the old open dashpot have been overcome in the design shown in Fig. 145. The ratio between the diameters of the plunger has been reduced, and the plunger has been extended to the top of the cushion chamber, preventing dirt dropping into it; the dashpot rod is held in place by a ball joint, eliminating friction due to bad alignment. The air for the cushion chamber is drawn from an annular space around the vacuum pot which, having a number of small holes drilled in the outer shell, acts as a silencer. The cushioning valve is operated by a handle, a slight turn of which will change the effect to suit. The snifting valve and drain-cock are in the bottom of the pot. This kind of dashpot will give good results if it is kept in first-class order.

Care should be taken to remove every particle of core sand from the inside of the plunger and the annular space of the pot; if this is neglected, there may be trouble

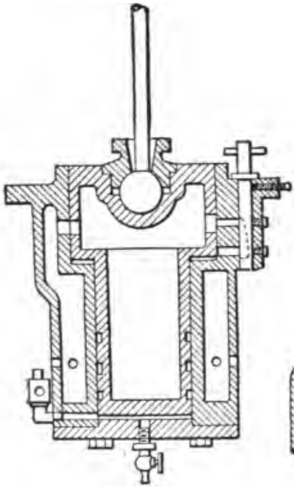


FIG. 145.—Improved dashpot.

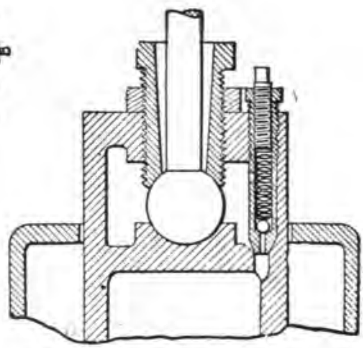


FIG. 146.—Note the snifting valve.

if the vibrations in running shake it loose so that it can work its way between the working surfaces of the plunger and the pot.

Fig. 147 represents what is called an inverted dashpot, in which the plunger is stationary and the pot moves. A removable cap makes the cushion chamber accessible. This kind of pot is practically dustproof. A little snifting valve is located on top of the stationary plunger—a bad place for it. Anything that obstructs this valve puts the pot out of service, and the whole apparatus has to be taken apart to remove the obstruction, which means a shutdown. Some kerosene squirted in through

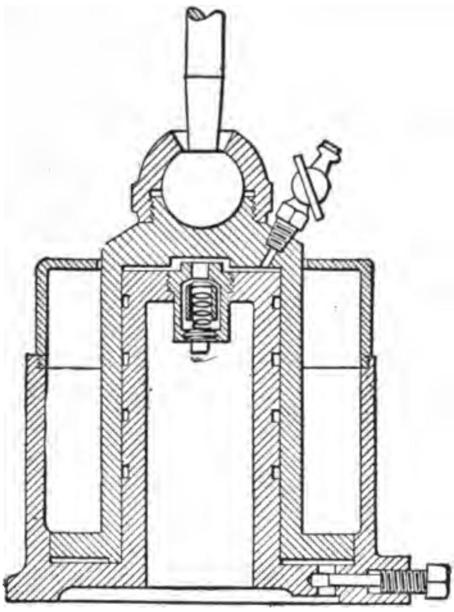


FIG. 147.—The inverted dashpot.

the pet-cock will sometimes wash it out. This dashpot seems to be constantly out of order; the plug gets loose and changes its position, making the action of the pot uncertain. There is no adjustment on the ball joint for the dashpot rod; if the ball wears and becomes loose, the nut must be taken off and reduced at the bottom by filing. These little imperfections on a thing that is otherwise all right are annoying.

Fig. 146 shows a way to overcome the trouble with the snifting valve, pet-cock and adjustment of the ball and socket. The top of the pot is enlarged and a thread cut inside a hole in it instead of on the outside, as in Fig. 147. A screw with a hole for the dashpot rod is screwed in. A check nut will hold the screw tight in place, and any wear or play in the ball joint can be taken up without difficulty. The enlarged head serves also to receive a combination snifting and air valve, which controls an opening to let in air, oil or kerosene, as required. Air made to enter and leave the pot through this valve passes through a chamber that surrounds the ball, thus preventing noise which it would make in passing through a pet-cock.

The inverted dashpot has an advantage over the first two pots described, inasmuch as it has a large outer casing that forms a natural reservoir for the air used in cushioning. No new supply from the outside is needed; the same air is used over and over again. As shown in Fig. 147, the pot has a turned flange at the bottom which performs the cushioning part by dropping into a bored recess of the casing. The sides of the casing slant toward the recess into which the flange is fitted, so that the cushioning takes place gradually. The screw at the bottom, which regulates the cushioning, is troublesome. It has a square head for adjustment by a wrench. This is unhandy, since the wrench is frequently mislaid. A knurled handwheel with a simple check would save a lot of trouble. Air and oil are discharged from the cushion chamber, below the floor through a small hole in the bottom.

Another inverted pot is shown in Fig. 148. It has no ready adjustment for the ball-and-socket joint, the cap being held on by tapbolts. The cushion chamber is not recessed; air is drawn in through little ball check valves in the bottom which are liable to get out of order by dirt or gummy oil getting into them. It is evident that a partial vacuum will be created in this chamber every time

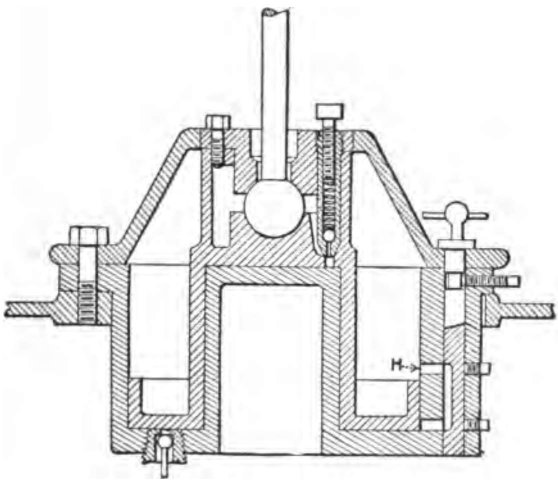


FIG. 148.—More elaborate inverted dashpot.

the pot is lifted, which would not be necessary if the regular vacuum chamber were made large enough to do the work. The amount of cushioning is regulated in a quick and effective way. On one side of the cushion chamber a hole is drilled vertically in an extension into which is fitted a straight plug having a groove milled on one side; this groove connects the two holes *H*, and by turning the plug the opening through the holes and, consequently, the cushioning can be closely regulated. This pot is about as nearly soundless as one can be made. There are no leathers required to counteract the shock of the descending plunger or pot, as on the other kinds. This is a great advantage, since the leathers wear out and have to be renewed.

The dashpots so far described are expensive and require

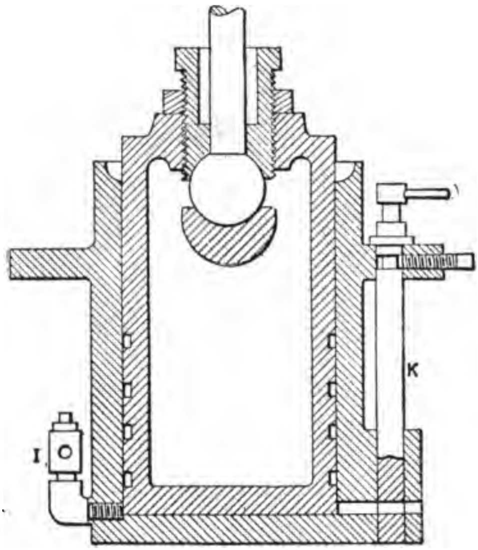


FIG. 149.—Simple plunger dashpot.

skill in manufacturing, on account of the exact fits which must be made on the two concentric parts of the pot and the plunger. If one of the parts is out of true, the device cannot work satisfactorily. To avoid some of the difficult fits, there are dashpots made of one plug and vacuum chamber without the extra cushioning part. Fig. 149 illustrates one of this kind. The purpose of the arrangement is that the lifting of the plunger will create a vacuum sufficient under all conditions to close the steam valve, and that in coming down the plunger will compress the air that has entered the pot, forming an effective cushion, the air to be discharged when the plunger is near the bottom. To accomplish this result, the diameter of the plunger must be comparatively large, since full atmospheric pressure cannot become effective as in the two-chamber pots. Some manufacturers persist in using single-plunger dashpots and obtain good results with them for steady loads, but for varying loads they are not satisfactory since they have to be adjusted every time the load changes considerably. If the snifting valve *I*, in Fig. 149, and the air-inlet valve *K* are set for a heavy load, the plunger will stick near the bottom when the load gets light, and if adjusted for a light load, it will hammer as soon as a heavy load is thrown on. Compressing air in the lower part of the pot with a blow has quite a heating effect. This can be seen if oil is poured around the plunger; as soon as it gets to the bottom of the pot, it will evaporate and be discharged in the form of a white vapor or smoke. Leather cannot be used in this pot to deaden the blow of the plunger, for it would soon be converted into charcoal.

A dashpot that made quite a sensation some years ago is shown in Fig. 150. It is provided with a differential plunger which in its upward movement compresses air above the larger part and forms a partial vacuum below. Air is forced through the holes drilled into an extension on the side of the pot, making a passage between the upper and the lower chambers, stopped by a taper plug. Most of the air will pass from the upper into the lower chamber in the upward motion, and on the down stroke will be forced back again, so that a continuous exchange of air takes place between the two chambers. On the down motion a partial vacuum will also be formed in the upper chamber and it is claimed this will have a retarding effect on the plunger. This pot is open to the same objections as the one with the single plunger and

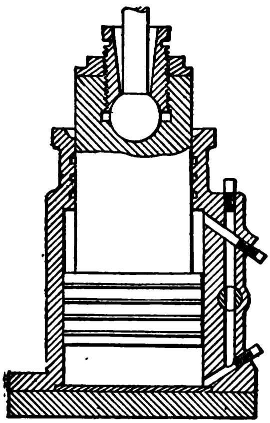


FIG. 150.—Differential plunger dashpot.

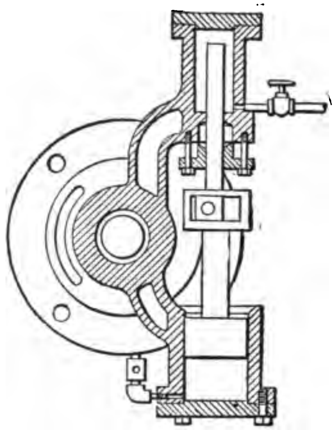


FIG. 151.—Steam dashpot.

chamber—it is deficient on varying loads and needs frequent adjustment.

Perhaps the most trying conditions for dashpots are those that prevail when a direct-connected engine is run on the friction load with, say, 150-lbs. pressure at the throttle and the brushes thrown off the commutator. Under these circumstances the steam valve will barely open, and the lift of the dashpot plunger is so small that it requires a high vacuum to force it down again after the valve gear has been tripped. Few dashpots will work under these conditions. It is unpleasant to see Corliss engines run on very light loads with full-pressure steam and the throttle wide open. It looks almost as if the valve gear were trying to pound itself to pieces. The steam pressure should be regulated to some extent according to the load, and every engineer who has any regard for his engine will attend to this. One of the requirements of a perfect-running valve gear is that the dashpots must always come down to the lowest position. For a varying load this is hard to attain without repeated adjustment, but there are times when the attendant cannot watch them, with the result that the valve gear gets noisy and troublesome. To overcome this, steam dashpots have been tried. The principle of such a pot is shown in Fig. 151. It consists of an upper steam cylinder and a cushion pot below, with the necessary piston for each. A small steam pipe with a stop valve is connected to the steam cylinder. The steam arm is attached to the block which slides in the slotted hole in the middle of the piston rod. The action is simple, and if everything is in working order it is positive. The valve gear pushes the steam piston up into the cylinder and the pressure of the steam forces it down again, as soon as cut-off occurs, till the cushion piston touches the bottom. There can be no doubt about the effectiveness of this device, but one has to contend with steam piping, stuffing-boxes, wear of steam piston, troublesome connection to the steam arm and also with varying steam pressures. Although in theory steam dashpots are good, in practice they have failed. They are hard on all the other parts of the valve gear.

Another pot is the spring dashpot, shown in Fig. 152. The weak point of this is that it relies on

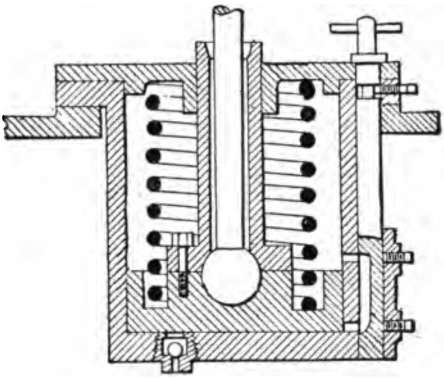


FIG. 152.—Spring-operated dashpot.

the action of the spiral spring to force the plunger down.

CHAPTER XI

GOVERNORS

Flyball governor for slow speed. Stepbearing. Weighted governor. Spring governors. Wearing parts of governor running in oil. Governor with one tension spring and roller bearings. Enclosed governor with oil pump. Inertia governor. Combination of centrifugal and inertia governor. Oil pots. Method of testing governor springs. Many accidents are caused by small pin. Safety lever. Antiquated collar on governor column. Change of speed. Governor drives. Fastenings of levers, gears, and pulleys. Equalizing cut-off on Corliss engines. Friction in cross-shafts. Unequal distribution of load in cylinders of compound engines. Adjustable levers. Emergency governor.

THE governor of an engine may be regarded as a permanent watchman, overlooking the performance of the apparatus with an observant eye. If more power is required, it drops, apparently on its own account, and lets the engine take more steam; and, as the load decreases, it rises and reduces the amount of steam to suit. We owe this device to the genius of James Watt. The old pendulum, or flyball, governor still holds its own. The principle on which its action is based is so simple and effective that it is still widely used. A few changes have been made to adapt it to various conditions. Engines designed by Watt ran slowly and so did the governors. As engine speeds increased, the governors were made to run faster and their size diminished.

Fig. 153 shows the customary form of flyball governor in use on many engines. The speed of these governors ranges from 50 to 60 r.p.m. Flyballs are from 6 to 9 in. diameter. The lift of the governor sleeve is from 3 to 4

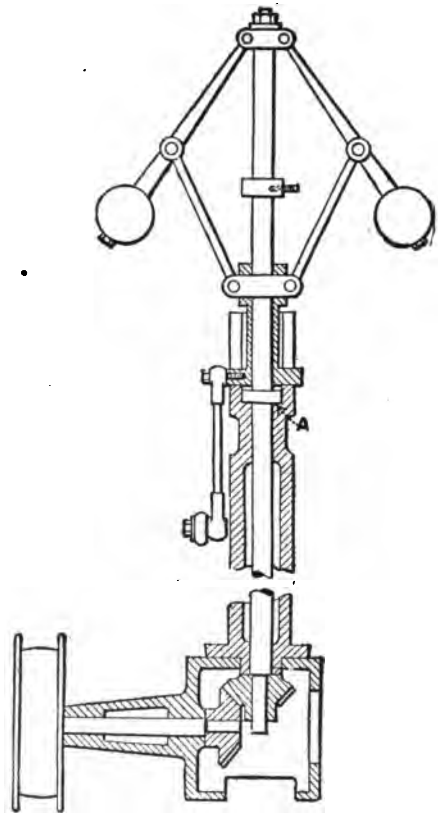


FIG. 153.—Common flyball governor.

in., with an additional drop of $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. to the safety stop. As the regulation of this governor is not close, it should be used only on engines for sawmills, stoneyards, machine shops, flour mills and factories with belt or rope transmission, where the friction load is a large percentage of the total and where close regulation is not essential. One of the troublesome features of the design is the collar *A* which supports the weight of the governor. If not always well oiled it will wear into its seat and change the height

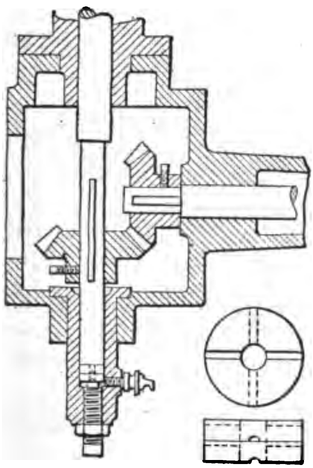


FIG. 154.—Step bearing for flyball governor.

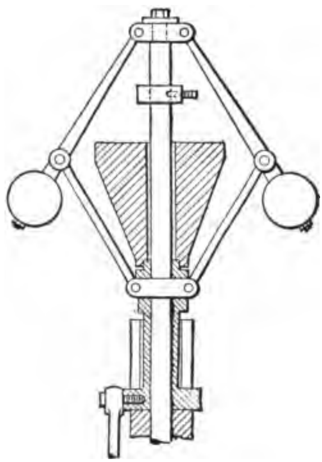


FIG. 155.—Weighted flyball governor.

of the governor and the cut-off of the valve gear. It may also cause the gears to mesh too deep and break the teeth. A ball bearing is sometimes placed under the collar, but this does not improve matters if the lubrication is insufficient.

To avoid the trouble with a collar, it is advisable to extend the spindle below the gear box and use a step bearing, as shown in Fig. 154. The end of the spindle should be hardened and ground. Two plates are to be placed under the spindle, the upper one of phosphor bronze and the lower of steel; each should have a hole in the center and oil grooves on both sides. The steel plate should rest on the end of a large set-screw, which will permit the governor to be adjusted for height and also to take up wear in the step. The set-screw should be secured by a check nut. The step bearing can be kept well oiled, since oil from the governor spindle and sleeve will drain into the bottom of the gear box; there is no danger of its running dry. It may be cleaned from time to time by pouring kerosene into it and draining it through a pipe-plug or small pet-cock near the bottom.

For engines that require closer regulation, run at a higher speed, and especially for compounds, a weighted governor like that shown in Fig. 155 is much used. By increasing weight and speed the governor is made more powerful and less liable to be affected by friction. The weight must not revolve with the spindle, it should simply rest on the sleeve. The hole should be at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. larger than the spindle to prevent contact causing friction. Everything about the sleeve and the joints must be free and well-oiled, otherwise the governor will stick in some places and make the engine race.

Governors that are actuated by centrifugal force and weights are slow in action; to attain greater sensitiveness and closer regulation, spring governors are used on many modern engines. Fig. 156 shows an example, with a compression spring in the top of the governor, adjustable by two nuts on the sleeve. The balls are made either in one piece with the lever or separate, as shown in the detail. If separate, they may be adjusted for height and accurate balance. Spring governors are simple in their conception, but they should not be experimented with except by competent mechanics. One case is known where an engineer

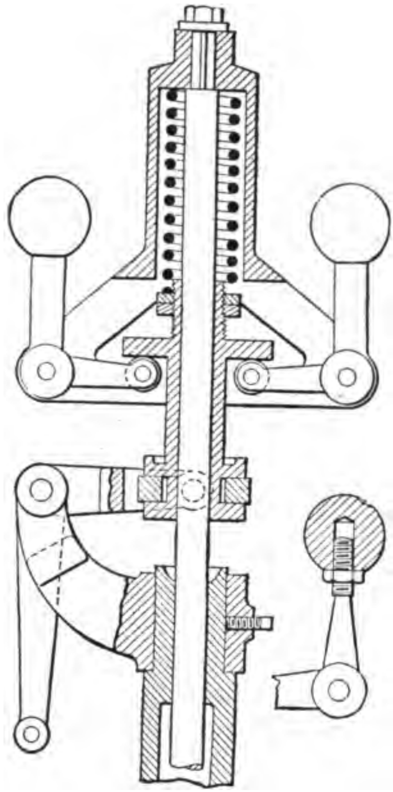


FIG. 156.—Flyball spring-loaded governor.

cut a couple of inches off the spring to make the engine run faster. He did not get exactly what he had expected and telegraphed the builders that their governor was no good and that they should immediately send a man to fix it.

The rollers at one end of the arms which actuate the sleeve have a tendency to wear flat on the circumference and grooves in the lugs of the sleeve, either of which will materially affect the reliability of the governor. The pins

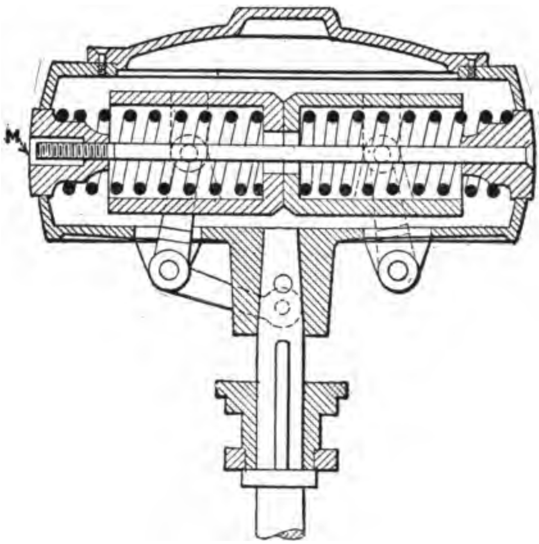


FIG. 157.—Enclosed spring governor.

in the arms are also subject to considerable wear on account of the heavy pressure exerted by the spring and the incessant oscillations of the balls. To obviate this defect, the governor shown in Fig. 157 has been designed. Instead of balls this has flat semicircular weights, each with a large hole in the center to receive a compression spring. The weights are supported by the arm by means of pins located in the same plane as their center of gravity. The centrifugal forces of the weights are directly opposed to the resisting forces of the springs, consequently there is no pressure due to either of these forces acting on the arms, and little wear on the pins. The springs can be adjusted, and the speed of the governor and engine varied

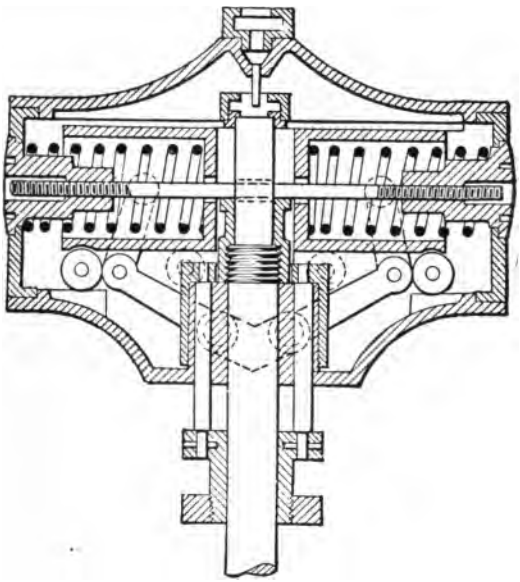


FIG. 158.—Enclosed spring governor with oil bath.

between certain limits by tightening or loosening the nut *M*, increasing or decreasing the pressure on the springs. On account of the high speed at which these governors run, it is almost impossible to keep the joints lubricated; a new supply of oil can be put on only when the governor is at rest, and this is soon thrown off when it is up to speed; there is no way of oiling the joints as long as it is in motion.

This deficiency has been overcome in the design shown in Fig. 158. The weights and springs are arranged as shown in Fig. 157, but the arms act on a sleeve connected to the collar by two studs passing, closely fitted, through holes in the hub of the casing, which extends well up into the inside and keeps the oil from running out. The weights are supported by rollers which run on planed surfaces of the casing. All parts in the lower half of the casing work in a bath of oil. The oiling of the upper pins, rollers and slides is effected through the cap on top while the governor is in motion. This governor is dust-proof and it cannot throw off any oil except that which works its way out through the two holes around the pins in the hub. For compactness and sensitiveness these inclosed-spring governors are about all that can be desired. The two springs are a disadvantage; unless they are evenly matched the governor is liable to be out of balance. Compression springs have a tendency to buckle if the ends are not truly square. It is advisable to pay attention to this before inserting the springs.

For testing the springs platform scales can be arranged inexpensively in the following manner: Two iron bars 2 in. wide by 1 in. thick, each about 4 in. longer than the base of the scales, are placed as shown in Fig. 159. They should have holes drilled in the end for two $\frac{5}{8}$-in. bolts with long threads and two nuts at each end to clamp the bars. The upper bar must be provided in the center with a long screw about $\frac{7}{8}$ in. diameter. The spring to be tested is placed on the platform, resting on a casting with a projection for the spring to fit over, as shown in detail. A similar casting is placed on top of the spring except that this one has a countersunk hole drilled in the upper side into which the pointed end of the set-screw fits. With everything in place, the scales are balanced without putting any pressure on the spring; the reading on the beam represents the weight of the bars, rods, screws, etc., and the spring. If the length of the spring was measured when free, the deflection of the same caused by the weight of the bars, etc., can be noted. The set-screw should now be turned one revolution at a time and the pressure after

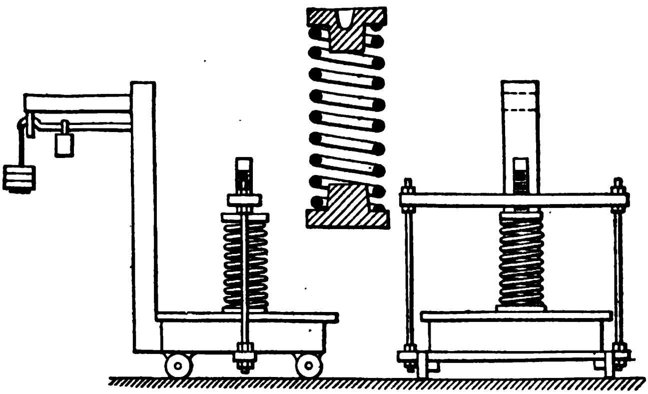


FIG. 159.—Testing springs on platform scale.

each turn recorded. For a $\frac{7}{8}$-in. screw it will take nine turns to compress the spring 1 in.; the difference between the first reading and the one after nine turns is called the stiffness of the spring, meaning, of course, that it takes that many pounds to compress it 1 in. The test must be continued for the full working range of the spring, after which the readings for each turn of the screw can be compared. For a good spring the increase in pressure for each turn must be uniform.

To obviate trouble arising from the use of two compression springs, the design shown in Fig. 160, using one tension spring, has been introduced. The speed can be adjusted by changing the tension of the spring. The

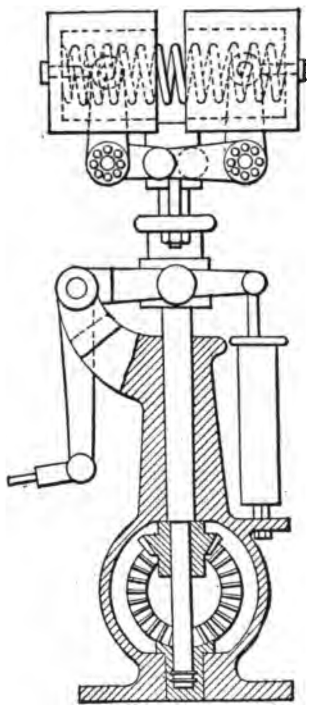


FIG. 160.—Tension spring governor.

arrangement of the weights is about the same as in Fig. 157, but there is no outside casing; everything is in plain view and can be watched. Roller bearings are provided for the pins in the weights as well as in the arms, reducing the friction to a minimum. The roller bearings retain the oil for a long time, so there is not much need for a fresh supply, and hardly any oil can be thrown. The

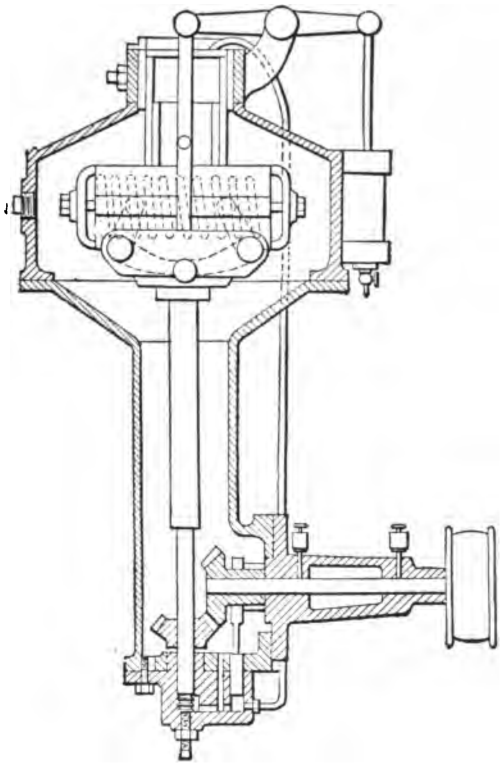


FIG. 161.—Enclosed tension spring governor.

governor spindle is supported in a step bearing without any adjustment for wear, and the gear on the spindle is located above its mate, which is subject to the same objection as raised in regard to Fig. 153.

Another centrifugal-spring governor with one tension spring is illustrated in Fig. 161. In this design all the rotating parts are inclosed in a stationary casing, making it impossible for oil to be thrown on the engine and floor or on the generator, if the engine is direct-connected, The lubrication is effected by a small pump located at the lowest point near the step bearing. When the governor is running and the pump is in working order, an abundance of oil will be forced to the top of the casing and from there over the working parts. This way of

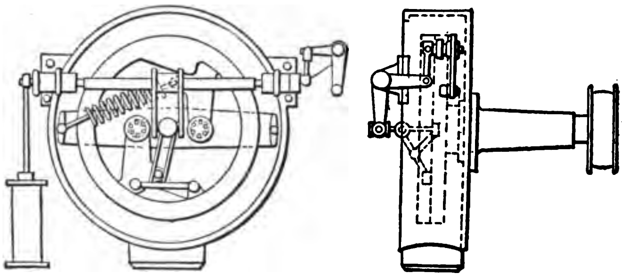


FIG. 162.—Inertia governor.

oiling is of doubtful value, for, if the pump gets out of order, the governor will have to run without oil until somebody discovers the trouble. It would be far better to take the oil supply from a continuous gravity oiling system with a stream of oil running into the top of the governor.

Inertia influences the moving parts of a governor to a great extent. Its action in the flyball and centrifugal spring types described is detrimental, as it either unduly retards or accelerates the motion of the balls and weights. In an appropriate design, however, it can be used to advantage. Fig. 162 shows an inertia governor that is in use on a number of engines, mostly direct-connected, noteworthy for close regulation on varying loads. In this design no gears are used for rotating the governor weights, also no vertical spindle nor step bearing. The shaft on which the pulley is located also supports the governor weights; there are only two bearings on the shaft to be looked after. The weights are annular, pivoted on a double arm keyed to the shaft; a spiral tension spring holds them in position, and a link forms a connection between the two. As the governor begins to rotate, the centrifugal force tends to move the weights away from the center, thus actuating an arm which in turn rotates a shaft and thereby controls the governor rods and cut-off levers by a series of intermediate levers and links. The many levers, bell-cranks, pins, links, ball-and-knuckle joints on this governor are its weak points. The revolving parts are protected by a substantial case, which also serves as an oil shield. This type closely resembles shaft governors on high-speed engines and, like them, has the pivots for the weights, which are liable to give trouble on account of friction and excessive wear, even if provided with roller bearings.

The construction shown in Fig. 163 represents a combination of a centrifugal and an inertia governor, the weights *A* forming the centrifugal and the wheel the inertia part. A tension spring located on a plane with the center of gravity of the weights counteracts the centrifugal and inertia forces. The wheel *C* is supported on a collar of the governor spindle on which it can rotate. The vertical pins *D* connect the wheel with the weights *A* by brackets which slide up and down over the pins, according to the outward or inward motion of the weights.

The action of the governor is as follows: With the engine running at normal speed the weights, wheel and spring will be in equilibrium, but when the engine slows down or speeds up, the governor spindle will follow suit. The weights will remain for an instant in their position, but the wheel, being free to move on the spindle, will

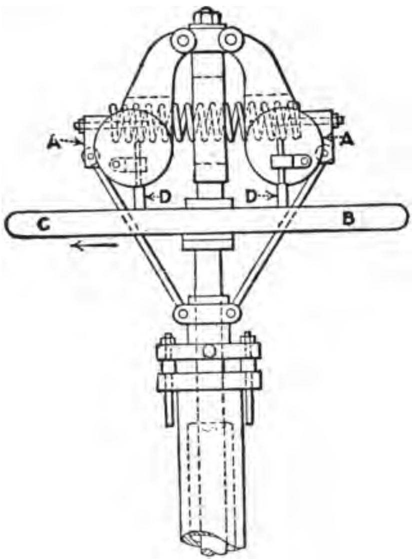
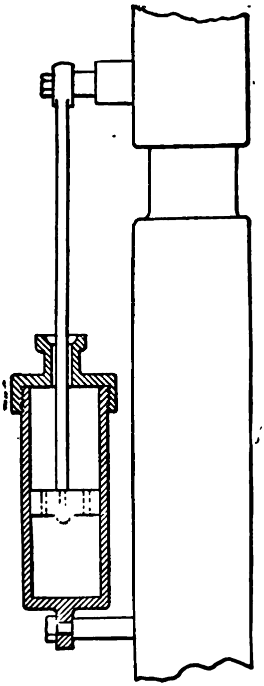


FIG. 163.—Combination centrifugal and inertia governor.

continue at the former speed, and force the governor weights inward, thus admitting more steam to the cylinder when the engine slows down and lags behind, with the opposite result, when it speeds up. The arrangement is ingenious and should give good results if everything is in working order, but here again one has to deal with a multiplicity of parts. The pins of the inertia wheel are liable to stick in the little brackets on the weights, or the wheel itself may bind on the spindle; in either event much trouble will follow. Complications on a governor should be avoided. All the parts of this



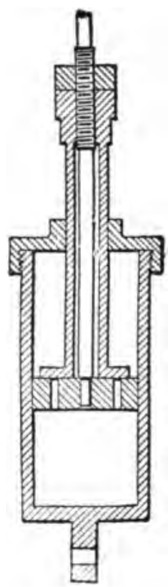


FIG. 164.—Non-adjustable oilpot. FIG. 165.—Adjustable oilpot.

one are exposed to view, but there is no provision made to prevent oil from being thrown off. If the load on an engine fluctuates considerably, the governor is liable to jump. Owing to the inertia of its parts it has a tendency to overtravel its true position on an instantaneous change of load. This may become troublesome unless an oil pot be provided to prevent violent motion.

A simple oil pot in use on many engines is shown in Fig. 164. To let the oil pass through, a number of holes are drilled in the piston, some of which may be plugged, according to the resistance required. The device is simple, but it has no outside adjustment. Fig. 165 shows the same style of pot which may be adjusted from the outside. The holes in the piston can be closed or opened to any degree desired by lowering or raising the sleeve. This makes a good oil pot.

Oil pots like that shown in Fig. 166, in which the flow of the oil is regulated by a valve in a pipe connection on the outside, are likely to give trouble on account of air which may accumulate at the top. If there is any air in the pot, it will be alternately compressed and expanded and make the governor unsteady. There should be a little valve at the top to let out air and take in oil. A stuffingbox is needed for this pot, which, of course, increases the friction. The oil pot shown in Fig. 167 has some good features. As it is made of brass it is not subject to rust like pots made of cast iron. The piston has a groove turned on the outside with four holes at right angles to each other drilled toward the center. The piston rod is made of a piece of brass tubing riveted into the piston with two holes drilled through, one above the other, close to the piston. A small piston valve inside of the tube controls the passage of oil through these holes and is adjusted by a screw and check nut on the top of the tube. The object of the groove and the four holes in the piston is to cause the oil to circulate around the circumference and make it tight. The kind of oil to

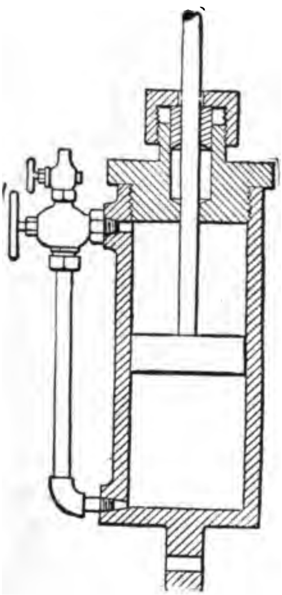


FIG. 166.—Oilpot regulated by valve.

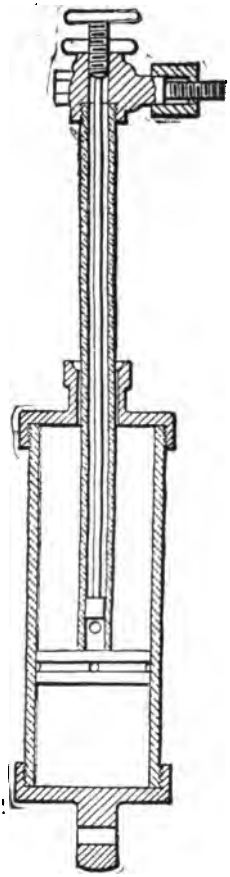


FIG. 167.—Adjustable oilpot with relief ports.

use in an oil pot must be learned by experience. It depends of course on the locality and on the season. That used in winter must be frostproof. Glycerine has been substituted in some cases, in others kerosene or a mixture of kerosene and machine oil. It depends on the prevailing conditions. All such devices must be watched to avoid gumming and sticking.

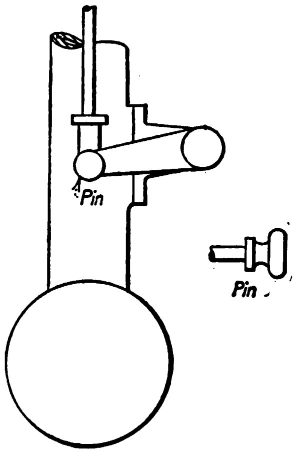


FIG. 168.—Small pin which has caused many accidents.

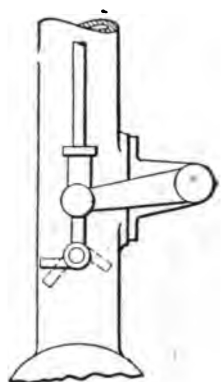


FIG. 169.—Safety lever.

Some accidents to Corliss engines have been caused by a small pin used on the governor, shown in Fig. 168. In starting the engine the governor is raised sufficiently to insert the pin in a hole in the governor column. With the governor in this position the engine will take steam full stroke. As the speed increases the lever will be lifted off the pin and the engine will begin to cut off. That is the time the pin should be taken out of the hole, but some engineers leave it in, and if anything should happen to the governor belt or gears to stop the governor, the lever will drop down on the pin, the engine take steam full stroke and will probably run away, since the pin prevents the governor from throwing in the safety cams. If, instead of the pin, a little lever is substituted, as shown in

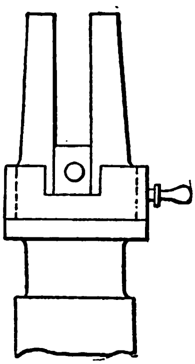


FIG. 170.—Unsafe collar for governor.

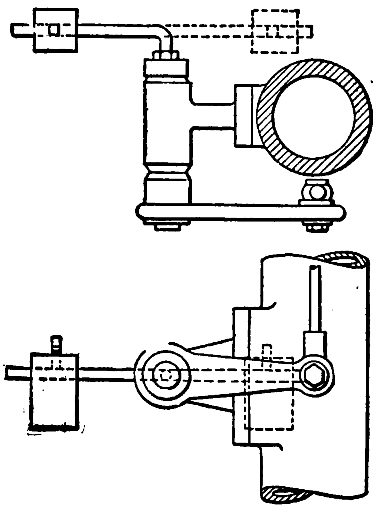


FIG. 171.—Small weight for change of speed.

Fig. 169, it will automatically drop into the position shown in dotted lines as soon as the governor rises, and the danger will be avoided.

A still more antiquated design than the little pin is shown in Fig. 170. It consists of a collar located on the governor column, having a slot into which the governor sleeve may drop provided it is in the right position.

If the slot is not in the right place the governor cannot drop sufficiently to make the safety cams operative. Wherever that ominous little pin or the collar is still in use on an engine, the engineer and proprietor had better be cautious. No insurance company will tolerate either one of

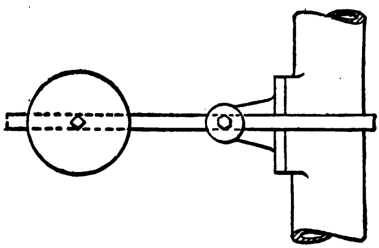


FIG. 172.—Too heavy weight makes governor sluggish.

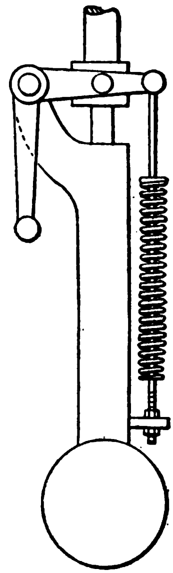


FIG. 173.—Spring used instead of weight.

these contrivances. Some engine builders are using the collar with a spring inside to throw it automatically into the proper position as soon as the governor rises. This, of course, eliminates the danger if everything is in good working order.

It is often desirable to change the speed of an engine, and if the change only amounts to two or three revolutions a minute, a lever and weight can be added, as shown in Fig. 171. If arranged as shown in full lines, the speed of the engine will be decreased, and if as in dotted lines, it will be increased. A large weight on a long lever, as shown in Fig. 172, making a considerable change of speed possible will render a governor sluggish and its action uncertain on account of the inertia of the parts. A spiral spring will give better results; it must be located in a central position to the governor, as indicated in Fig. 173. Attaching a heavy weight or a spring to the side of the sleeve or to the governor lever will increase the friction and make its action unreliable. If the speed of an engine is to be permanently changed, say ten or more revolutions per minute, it will be advisable to change the governor pulley, making it larger in diameter for higher speeds and smaller for slower. A change in the ratio of the gears will give the same result. Change of speed by means of frictional drives using conical pulleys or friction disks should be used only in extreme cases where the variation in speed amounts to 40 to 50 per cent.

There are more belt drives in use on governors than all other drives combined, in spite of the fact that every designer and engineer knows the short-comings of a belt. It will stretch, break, slip, run off, run crooked, get soaked with oil, etc.; still, we find it in use on almost every engine. The reasons for this are that it is cheap, noiseless, easily put on and repaired; it is always in plain view and can be watched and replaced if it shows signs of weakness. At the same time it is a constant source of worry.

Gear drives came into use some years ago, but most of them have been discarded. They were expensive, required a lot of lubrication, the bearings ran hot, the babbitt would wear out and the teeth of the driving gear on the main shaft would break.

On some large engines, where the distance between the main shaft and the governor is considerable, ropes are used, generally three of them. They are, of course, never of the same length and have not the same tension—one rope will do most of the driving while the others do hardly any work. If a rope gets too slack, it must be respliced, which requires considerable skill. If carelessly done every time a splice runs over the sheave there will be a jerk on the governor, causing an irregular speed.

Silent-chain drives are in use on some engines that require close regulation. They must be carefully covered to prevent dirt getting into the chain; if anything gets out of order the engine may be thrown out of service for quite a while. It is advisable to have spare parts of the chain and extra sets of chain wheels on hand, to be prepared for an emergency.

The trouble with some belt drives for governors is that the belt is of inferior quality, of insufficient width, or the governor pulley is too small. On many engines the governor belt runs directly on the main shaft, but for high-speed governors a pulley is used, which must be well secured. If it ever becomes loose and slips, there may be just enough friction between shaft and pulley to keep the governor revolving, preventing it from throwing in the safety-cams, but admitting more steam than is required, making the engine speed up and perhaps run away. A double leather belt should be used, not less than 3 in. wide. It must be endless, even and tight, without metal joints or lacing, and it must be kept free from oil.

Considerable trouble is experienced with governor levers, gears and pulleys coming loose; all of these parts must be secured in the most approved manner. It is best to use two ways of fastening, so that if one should fail the other will insure safety. A poor way to hold a lever on a shaft is by means of a taper pin; next to that is the use of only one set-screw. Fig. 174 shows a good

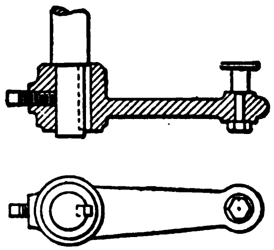


FIG. 174.—Good fastening for governor levers.

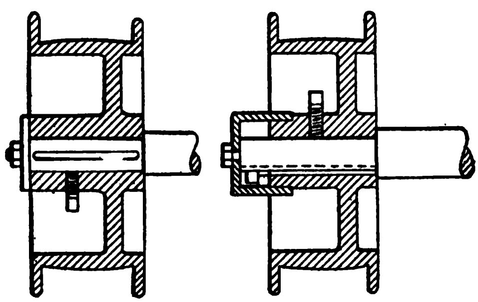


FIG. 175.—Method of fastening governor pulleys.

way to fasten governor levers, by a feather and a cupped case-hardened set-screw. The same method is used in Fig. 175 to hold the governor pulley securely on its shaft. As an extra precaution, a washer with stud and nut keeps the pulley from working off. A driven key may be used in the pulley hub, in which case a cap should be provided, held in place by a stud and nut to prevent the key getting loose and to protect the attendant from being caught by the key. Fig. 176 shows an approved way of holding the

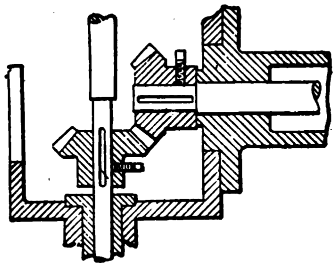


FIG. 176.—Gear fastenings on shaft and spindle.

gears on the shaft and spindle. Feathers and set-screw together are also employed, the driven gear being placed below, which is the safest position for it.

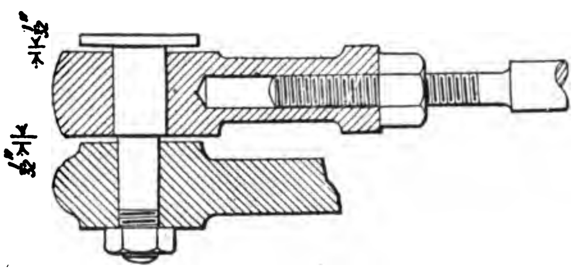


FIG. 177.—Stub ends of rods should never fit tightly.

The stub ends of governor rods should have about $\frac{1}{32}$ in. play on each side, as shown in Fig. 177; under no circumstances should they fit tight between the lever and the head of the pin. The lift of a flyball governor is usually limited by a collar on the spindle, as shown in Fig. 178. This collar must be placed high enough so that the governor cams will trip the valve gear and prevent steam entering the cylinder with the sleeve or weight touching the collar. A set-screw let deep into the spindle and screwed up tight should secure the collar; if it slips down and keeps the governor from rising to the highest

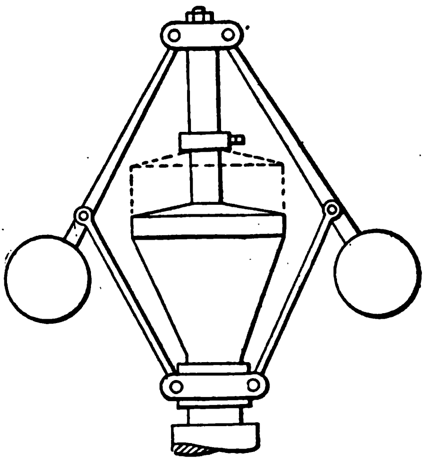


FIG. 178.—The lift of a flyball governor is limited by a collar.

position, the chances are that the engine will run away on a light load.

All the parts which connect governor and valve gear must be as light as is consistent with safety; therefore, of the arrangements shown in Fig. 179, the one marked *A* is the better. The double lever in *B* makes the upper rod in some engines long and heavy. It may begin to vibrate and interfere with the cut-off on the head end. If the rod is so long that it will sag even if made of a piece of pipe, it must be cut in two and supported by a carrier, thus increasing the friction.

Especial care should be used to locate the pins in the cam levers in such positions that cut-off at both ends of the

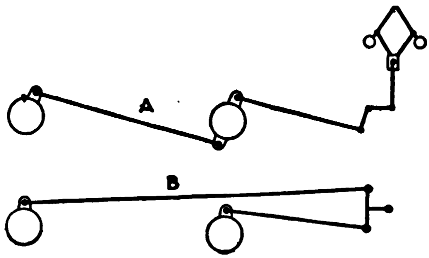


FIG. 179.—Arrangement of governor rods.

cylinder is equal for any load, or at least as near so as the angularity of connecting-rod and eccentric rod will allow. For equal cut-off the crank pin travels through a greater arc on the crank end than on the head end. In

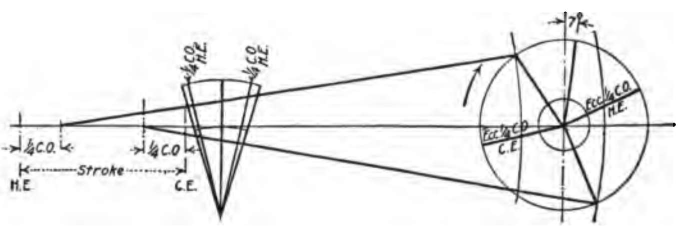


FIG. 180.—Travel of crankpin for ¼ cutoff.

Fig. 180 the arcs are shown for one-quarter cut-off. The difference in travel should be compensated in the valve gear and setting of the governor-cams. Using the ordinary rocker arm of a single-eccentric engine and an angular advance of about $7°$ for the eccentric, the positions of the rocker arm show that here the conditions are reversed in relation to the piston travel. In other words, the rocker arm moves slowly with the piston moving fast at the head end and it moves fast with the piston moving slowly at the crank end; provided, of course, that the motion of the crankpin is uniform. The cam on the head end should, therefore, be made to travel through a greater arc for a given cut-off than the one on the crank end.

The usual way to lay out valve gears is to assume that the angles through which the crank and eccentric travel are alike for equal cut-off, and it keeps an engineer guessing why he has to change the governor rods almost every time he indicates the engine, in order to equalize the load at both ends of the cylinder. Unless the angularity of the connecting-rod and eccentric rod is taken into account, the ordinary Corliss valve gear will give equal cut-off for only one position of the governor, that being the one for which it is adjusted by blocking. For all other positions the cut-off at both ends of the cylinder will be unequal. If an engineer will go through all the phases of indicating his engine, from the latest cut-off to the earliest by lifting the governor one-quarter inch at a time and blocking it, he will get an instructive set of diagrams. Trying to equalize the cut-off on an engine without blocking the governor is, of course, useless unless the load is steady.

On cross-compound engines trouble with the regulation may be caused by friction in the bearings of the cross-shaft. Even if this shaft be made of a piece of pipe, there will be a certain amount of deflection. The bearings should, therefore, have spherical seats so they can adjust themselves. Fig. 181 shows a simple arrangement that may be used to advantage on both sides of a cross-compound engine. The spherical part of the bearing gives it a chance to accommodate itself to defects of the cross-shaft due to deflection or bad alignment.

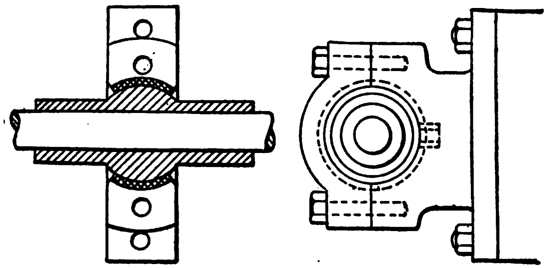


FIG. 181.—Spherical bearing for governor cross-shaft.

Unequal distribution of the load on the two cylinders of compound engines is often very troublesome. It is generally due to faulty construction of the governor

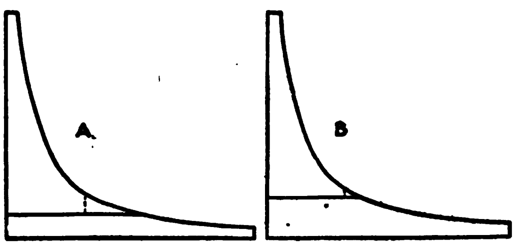


FIG. 182.—Combined cards of a compound engine.

levers. Referring to the two diagrams in Fig. 182, showing the combined cards of a compound engine, *A* indicates that the high-pressure cylinder carries a greater load than the low-pressure. To equalize the burden the cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder must be shortened, which will raise the receiver pressure and distribute the load equally, as shown in diagram *B*. The simplest way to accomplish this is to lengthen the governor lever on the low-pressure side.

The levers shown in Fig. 183 will answer the purpose. One of them has a number of holes drilled in the end; the pin can be changed from one hole to another to raise or lower the receiver pressure. A more accurate adjust-

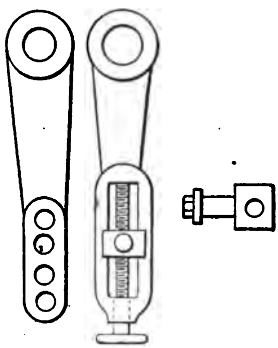


FIG. 183.—Slotted governor lever.

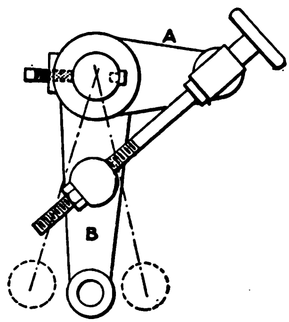


FIG. 184.—Adjusting device for governor lever.

ment can be made with the other lever, which has a slotted end provided with a screw and handwheel. The position of the pin on this one can be changed gradually without disconnecting the rod. If a double lever be used, the adjustment must be on both ends. The same result is sometimes obtained by moving the low-pressure governor lever ahead or back without changing its length, which can be done by an arrangement shown in Fig. 184. There are two levers used in this case. *A* is secured on the shaft, while *B* is loose and adjusted for position by means of a screw. For the greatest possible refinement this device is sometimes furnished with a slotted end on the loose lever.

It must always be understood that a governor will regulate the speed of an engine only if everything is in working order, and it is the engineer's business to keep it so; but even the most untiring care and vigilance cannot prevent the breaking of a stub end or rod, slipping of

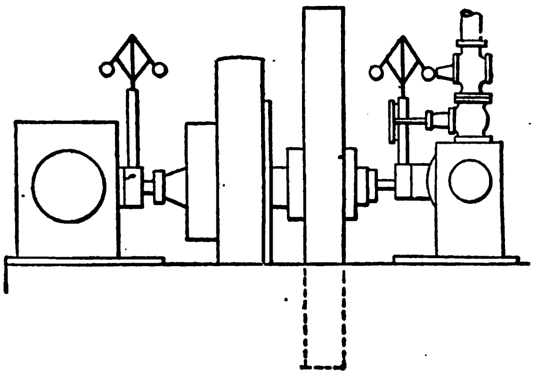


FIG. 185.—Cross-compound engine with two governors.

the belt, breaking of levers and pins and other accidents, which will endanger life and buildings. It seems, therefore, that one governor alone should not be relied on, but that the engine should be provided with a second device which would act and prevent it from running away if the regular governor should fail.

Fig. 185 shows a cross-compound engine with two governors—the one on the low-pressure side to regulate the cut-off of the engine and the one on the high-pressure side to operate an emergency valve should the engine exceed its normal speed by from five to ten revolutions. The second governor will pull a latch on the stem of the emergency valve, releasing a weight which will close the valve and shut off steam from the engine.

CHAPTER XII

RELEASING GEARS

Old crab claw. Reynold's radial gear. Other radial gears. Overhung pins and hookblocks. Straight springs. Trip motions with rollers and cams. Gravity trip motion. Valve-gear catch plates.

The old crab claw, Fig. 186, is disappearing. It has done good service on slow-speed engines running with a steady load and using low-steam pressures. The trouble with it is that the catch plates and pins are subject to excessive wear, which makes it expensive to keep in repair.

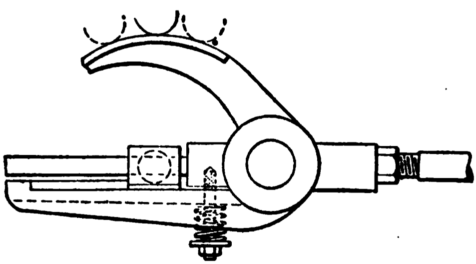


FIG. 186.—Crab claw.

On account of its weight the crab claw is liable to miss hooking on. The leverage on the curved arm changes for different cut-offs, as indicated in dotted lines in the sketch, throwing a variable strain on the governor.

The radial valve gear, Fig. 187, originated by Edwin Reynolds, has some decided advantages over the crab-claw gear, although it, too, is becoming obsolete. The hook used to be made of bronze and was liable to break; the hole for the pin wore out of round, making the valve gear noisy and unreliable. The hook should, therefore, be made of forged steel, and the hole should have a bronze bushing that can be replaced when worn. The curved spring is troublesome, for it is almost impossible to make two springs of this kind alike in shape and temper; some of them will last a lifetime, others break after a short while. If they are too stiff, they will throw a greater strain on the

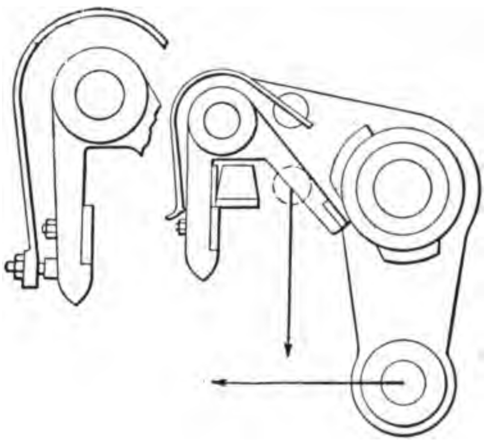


FIG. 187.—Reynolds' radial gear.

governor, and if too weak, the catch plates will slip and wear off rapidly until they will not pick up. It is common practice to push a piece of leather under the spring and exert more pressure on the hook and to change the catch plates as soon as the engine can be shut down. A spring adjustable by a set-screw at the extreme end which bears against the hook, as shown in detail, is being used. This may or may not be an improvement; it depends on the pressure put on the hook. If the engineer does not use good judgment, but tries to make sure of hooking up even if the catch plates are worn a little and exerts all the pressure the spring will stand, the shock on the governor to release the hook will be excessive and the strain on the valve gear much increased. As the toe plate on the trip lever of the hooks wears, the engine will take more steam for the same position of the governor and its speed will increase. This should be watched for and the plates be changed to another edge when the wear becomes notice-

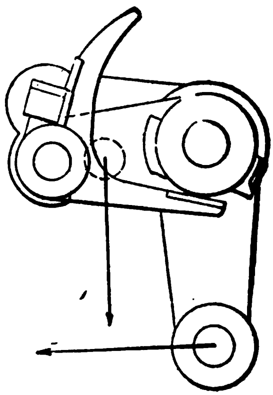


FIG. 188.—Hook located on the steam arm.

able. A piece of leather on the hook is often used to control the lap of the catch plates, but it will wear by hammering on the hook and should be renewed from time to time.

Notwithstanding its shortcomings, the Reynolds radial gear has been copied by many engine builders and modified by some; in fact nearly all Corliss releasing gears are based on the radial principle. The designer of the arrangement shown in Fig. 188 got himself into trouble by locating the hook on the steam arm with the dashpot rod. The hook block is fastened in the steam bell crank, the hook is reversed and the action is the opposite to that of the Reynolds gear. On higher speeds and variable loads the design was found to be defective. The hook would shake loose on its pin and fail in picking up, owing to the inertia of the trip lever. So the hook was changed to the position shown in Fig. 189, which corrected the trouble. The pickup takes place on the inside of the hook block, and the inertia of the trip lever assists in hooking up.

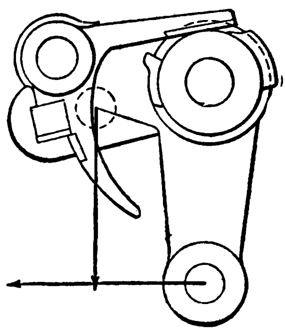


FIG. 189.—Correct position of the hook on the steam lever.

An improvement on the original radial gear is shown in Fig. 190. One of the catch plates is supported directly on the under side of the steam arm, without the use of a hook block. This throws the strain in direct line with the arm, without any lever action as on the gears just described. Overhung pins and hook blocks are likely to become troublesome, since the strains act on a leverage instead of in a straight line. The consequence is that the parts wear out, especially the catch plates, requiring frequent change of cutting edges and renewal. The hook in Fig. 190 is bolted to a rockshaft which rotates in a long bearing in one arm of the steam bell crank and carries at the other end a trip lever with a roller. The knockoff

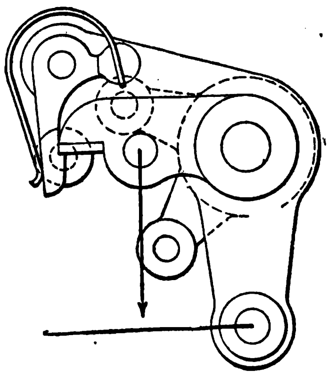


FIG. 190.—Improved radial valve gear.

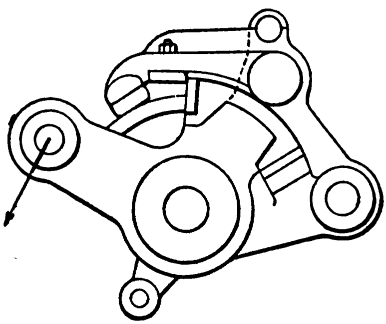


FIG. 191.—Gravity valve gear.

lever is provided with rollers instead of cams, as on the Reynolds gear. The only objection to this design is the curved spring.

Fig. 191 shows a simplified hook with an extension on one side near the end, which acts as a trip lever. In tripping a side strain is thrown on the hook, which will wear the hole out of round. The hook acts partly by gravity; a light spring is also used to prevent the catch plate slipping at high speed. The extension on the hook carries a piece of fiber which rides on the knockoff lever and trips the valve gear. This is a doubtful improvement; it makes the valve gear almost noiseless, but shows

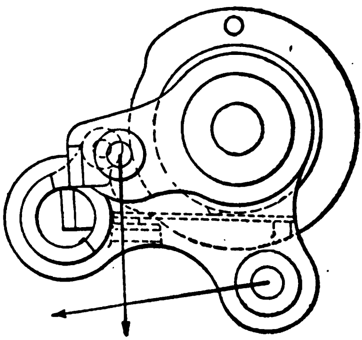


FIG. 192.—Valve gear using a straight spring.

considerable wear after a short time. With a little care this valve gear will give good service for a long time.

The aim of valve-gear designers is to bring all strains as nearly as possible in the same plane and to do away with curved springs. Fig. 192 shows the first successful gear of this kind, which is still much used. There is no hook, and the end of the rockshaft is simply milled out to receive the catch plate. The latter engages its mate, which is screwed to the outer end of the steam arm. Both plates are placed in a vertical position instead of one horizontally and the other vertically. This has its advantage, as will be explained later. With the catch plate on the extreme end of the steam arm, the dashpot pin can be moved out, thereby increasing the lift of the pot and the leverage of the arm, making it more effective, especially for double-ported valves and high steam pressures. There is no appreciable wear of the rockshaft; even after years of service it will remain in excellent condition if the oiling is attended to, because it has full support under the catch plate where the greatest strain is applied. The trip lever at the other end of the rockshaft is provided with a roller that strikes a cam on the knockoff lever. The weak point of this valve gear is the insignificant straight spring that is forced in between two fixed points on the steam bell crank and a lug on the knockoff lever. A heavy initial strain is put on the spring, and as its working length is short it will soon break. A supply of these springs must be kept on hand; if one breaks, a new one can be slipped in place without stopping the engine, and even two, one on top of the other, may be used if one is not strong enough. The roller at the end of the knockoff lever makes this valve gear somewhat noisy when it is run at high speeds.

Fig. 193 shows a similar design, but instead of extending the rockshaft bearing to the outer edge of the lever carrying the catch plate, it is increased in diameter and provided with an adjusting screw by which the lap of the catch plates can be regulated to any desired degree. If the edges wear a little, the lap can be increased, which is often a great convenience. There are no leathers used for regulating the pick-up. A substantial straight spring, not subject to frequent breaking, makes the valve gear hook up, and a straight trip lever effects the release by striking a fiber block. On this valve gear the steam arm is supported and bears in the bonnet, which is unusual. It has the good effect that the valve stem is relieved of all transverse strain and wear at the outer end. The leverage of the dashpot rod pin is short, therefore, it requires powerful dashpots to close the steam valves tightly. On light loads and with high steam pressure the pots will stick, causing the valve gear to rattle disagreeably. If the catch plate on the steam arm should be placed vertically,

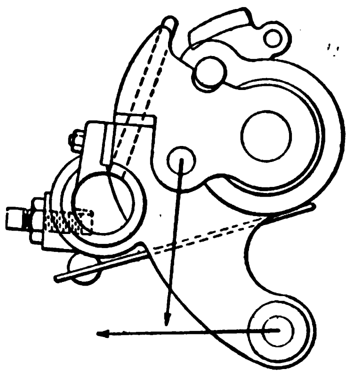


FIG. 193.—Adjusting screw for catch plate is used.

as in Fig. 192, the pin for the dashpot rod could be moved out considerably and the trouble overcome.

Curved or straight springs used on trip motions give more or less trouble and should be avoided if possible. Fig. 194 shows a design which engages the catch plates by gravity and accomplishes the knockoff by a cam and roller without the use of a spring. One of the catch plates is fastened to a long bolt with a sliding motion in the steam arm. For high speeds this gear does not seem to be suitable, the heavy bolt and plate make its action sluggish;

besides, the hardened block wears a shoulder on the steam arm and this in the course of time will impair its action.

A modification of this gear is shown in Fig. 195. The catch plates are transferred from below to above the arm, the sliding bolt is made shorter and lighter and the cut-off is effected by a trip lever with a roller. The catch plates engage by gravity. There is an auxiliary light spring provided to accelerate the motion of the sliding bolt, but

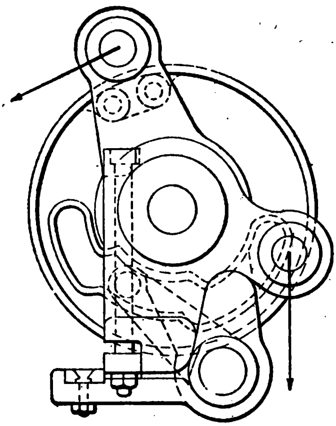


FIG. 194.—Gravity valve gear with cam and roller.

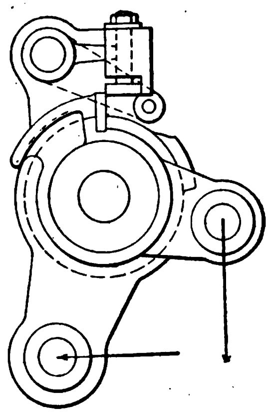


FIG. 195.—Gravity valve gear with trip lever.

this is found to be necessary only on high speeds. The appearance of the whole design is pleasing, but the short sliding bolts give trouble after a short while and the action becomes uncertain, when the catch plates fail to engage occasionally, with the result that the steam valve does not open.

The design shown in Fig. 196 is rather complicated, but no spring is used and the latch and lever carrying the catch plates are well supported; the trip lever is connected to a flat steel arm having two cam surfaces milled on the sides, the motion of which is controlled by two rollers on the knockoff lever. The action seems to be quite positive and satisfactory. The rollers will become noisy after considerable service, especially on higher speeds.

In Fig. 197 the trip arm, trip lever and rockshaft are located on the top of the steam bell crank and arm. There

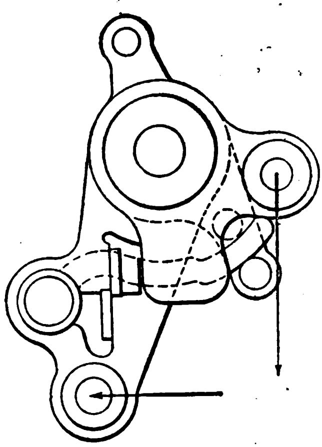


Fig. 196.—Gravity valve gear with curved trip lever and rollers.

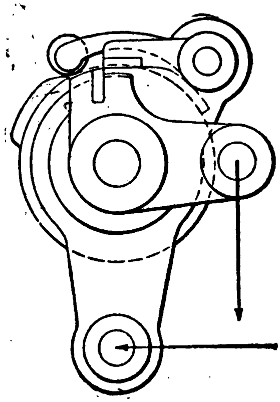


Fig. 197.—A serviceable gear.

are no springs, delicate cam levers or slotted plates used, which will wear out and are expensive; everything works by gravity. The rockshaft has a long bearing in the bell crank and the knockoff cams and safety cams are easily replaced if worn. This valve gear will give good service if properly attended to.

The valve gear shown in Fig. 198 differs from others in its method of tripping the catch plates by a separate motion imparted to a slotted knockoff lever. The motion is derived from an eccentric on the main shaft and is carried through a rocker arm on the governor to the valve gear. There are numerous levers, pins, links and rollers employed, which, of course, will wear out, make the gear noisy, require a lot of lubrication and attention and become generally troublesome. The inertia due to the oscillation of the knockoff levers and connections is a disturb-

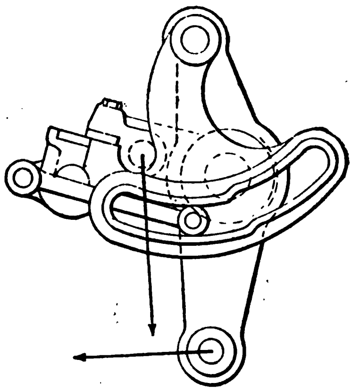


FIG. 198.—Valve gear having a separate motion for knockoff lever.

ing factor. As all the pins and rollers of this trip motion must be hardened and ground and the pivots for the governor connections are hardened and have to run in hardened tool-steel bushings, trouble may be expected. For American practice, where simplicity, reliability, durability and ease of repairs are of paramount importance, this valve gear can hardly be recommended. The claim that it is superior to other long-range gears on account of using only one wristplate while others use two, can hardly be substantiated at the present time, since some Corliss engines have no wristplate at all.

Naturally, the parts that are subject to the greatest shocks and wear on a valve gear are the two catch plates, which engage on a narrow edge every time the valve gear hooks up. On new engines where the steam valves have not yet come to a proper seat, these plates are often overstrained and break off at the edges. New valves are likely to work hard, unless well lubricated. The plates must be made of high carbon steel, well tempered. In Fig. 199

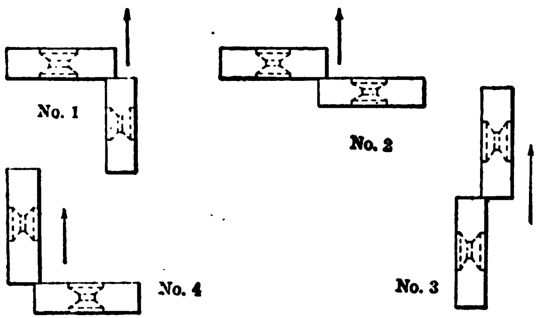


FIG. 199.—Position of catch plates.

the prevailing positions of the plates in regard to one another are shown. In No. 1 the edge of a high side engages an edge of a flat side; in No. 2 the edges of two flat sides come in contact; in No. 3 those of two high sides, and in No. 4 a flat side against a high side. Although it is claimed for high carbon steel that it has no grain and offers the same resistance per unit of area in any direction, it is evident from the way most of it is hammered out into long bars that if there is any fiber or grain it must run lengthwise in the bar, and that the material will offer greater resistance to shock in this direction than in any other. Of the four different positions in Fig. 199, therefore, No. 3 should be the most advantageous for the plates. Experience seems to bear this out. There is, among others, a case on record where two catch plates in this position have been working for over ten years at 120 r.p.m. six to eight hours a day, six days a week, without changing the wearing surfaces. The plates were in the same position when examined; as when the engine was started, showing a smooth sharp edge without any wear. The steam pressure

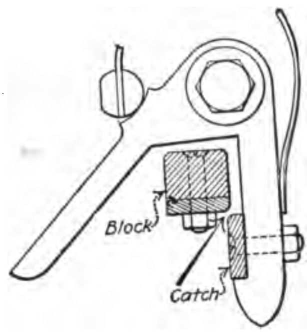


FIG. 200.—Catch plates showing wear of the edges.

carried on the boilers is 120 lbs. This performance has probably never been equalled.

The catch plates should be made square to make eight wearing surfaces available by changing their position. The edges are often broken by allowing too much space between them in hooking up; the closer they come together the lighter will be the shock and the longer they will last. For a nice running valve gear the distance should not be more than $\frac{1}{16}$ in., and the depth to which the two plates engage should also not exceed $\frac{1}{16}$ in., or $\frac{3}{32}$ in.

at the most; if they have to engage deeper to catch, something is wrong and should be corrected. If the plates wear round, as shown in Fig. 200, they will miss in hooking up and no steam will be admitted to the cylinder on that end, the engines will probably slow down taking steam only on one end and the regulation will be bad. The plates should be changed to new cutting edges.

CHAPTER XIII

WRISTPLATES AND VALVE MOTIONS

Single wristplates. Range of cut-off is limited with single eccentric. Valve-gear diagrams. Imperfect release shown by indicator diagrams. Steam lead table. Double eccentric wristplate motions for long range cut-off. Parallel motion for high speeds. Adjustment of valve rods.

THE single wristplate has been a favorite for years. It seems hard to break away from it, with its toggle motion, ease of adjustment and handling. For warming up, starting, stopping and occasionally reversing an engine, nothing simpler has ever been devised. There is a variety of wristplates in existence—old pear-shaped affairs with long throw, significantly called swingplates by their makers; wheel wristplates; round, balanced and spider wristplates—all of which are subject to the same defect, inertia. Some of them are heavy, throwing considerable strain on hook and eccentric rods. Fig. 201 shows the different kinds of wristplates mentioned.

Although the single type, limiting the cut-off in the cylinder to about $\frac{7}{16}$ of the stroke was partly responsible for the remarkable economy of the old Corliss engines, compared with late-cut-off slide-valve engines, on account of the more rational expansion which users of these engines were compelled to adopt, the tendency is to eliminate it and substitute a valve motion which will permit of a long-range cut-off for occasional extremely heavy loads and which is also suitable for higher rotative speeds. This is done in several different ways—by using two wristplates, or one wristplate for the exhaust and parallel motion for the steam, or parallel motion for both steam and exhaust without any wristplate. The objections to wristplates, of course, are greater inertia, more wear, lubrication and repairs. The parallel-motion gear seems to be the only feasible one. It is a trifle more complicated.

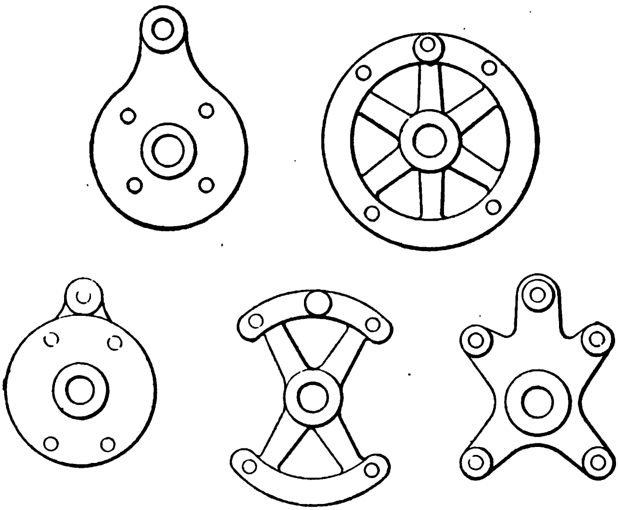


FIG. 201.—Common forms of wristplates found in practice.

On the single-eccentric wristplate motion shown in Fig. 202 any valve can be adjusted independently of the others, for lap with the wristplate central and for lead with the crank on the dead centers. A study of the valve-gear diagram shows its limitation and also the trouble that may be expected if an engine with this motion is overloaded. Single ports are shown for simplicity. The principle is the same for double or any number of ports. With the wristplate in the central position all the valves

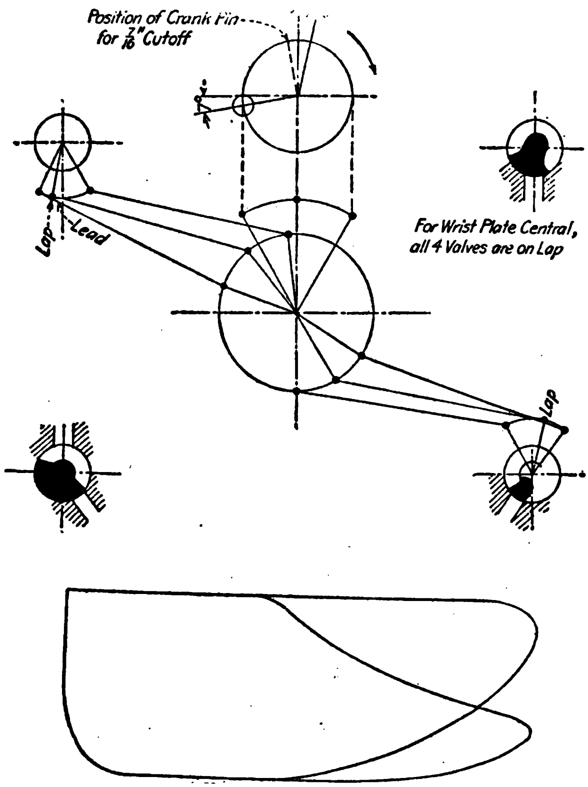


FIG. 202.—Single eccentric wristplate motion and indicator diagram.

must be on the lap. Disregarding all angularities of the connecting-rod and eccentric rod, the relative positions of the crankpin and eccentric for the mid-position of the wristplate are shown in the detail. The eccentric stands for this position at 90° to the horizontal and the crankpin about 7° below. Moving the crankpin to the dead center advances the eccentric 7° from the vertical center line; the head-end steam valve is now on the lead, and if we move the crank around until the eccentric reaches its extreme travel, we find that it has reached a position 7° from the vertical center line. This represents the latest cut-off which the valve gear affords. If the valve gear has not been tripped by the time the eccentric and wristplate have reached their limit, the engine will take steam full stroke; there is no regulation possible between about $\frac{7}{16}$ cut-off and full stroke, and if an overload is put on requiring more steam than the $\frac{7}{16}$ cut-off can admit, the speed of the engine will be irregular. Not only that, but all the working parts will be strained. It takes a certain amount of time to close a steam valve when wide open, therefore, an indicator card may show a cut-off of 50 per cent for a single-eccentric gear, which, of course, is theoretically impossible if the exhaust valves have the requisite amount of lap and lead for compression and release. The steam valve at the head end works simultaneously with the exhaust valve at the crank end and *vice versa*. Therefore, the same distance through which the wristplate travels to move the steam valve from the lap to the lead position is utilized to make the exhaust valve at the other end travel from lap to lead and no more; the motion of one depends on that of the other. This explains in part why a single-eccentric valve gear is limited as to compression and release for the exhaust. The hands of the designer are tied, so to speak, on this valve gear; if he advances the eccentric to give an earlier release and more compression, he reduces the range of cut-off, and if the eccentric is moved back, release and compression will be reduced and the cut-off extended.

A late cut-off indicator diagram is shown in Fig. 202. The effect of imperfect release is clearly noticeable. The diagram for steam full stroke in the same figure shows pronounced wire drawing in the exhaust port. No fixed rule can be established for the amount of lap and lead that should be given the valves of an engine. That depends on the throw of the wristplate and the travel of the valves, which varies with the different makes of engines. Most all Corliss engines have marks on the valves showing the cutting edges and the necessary lap; a few of them indicate the lead. As stated before, with the wristplate central the valves must be on the lap.

If there are no lead marks the following table may be used for the steam valves, with the understanding that it is subject to change to suit conditions:

Size of engine, in.......	2	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28
Lead of steam valve, in.	$\frac{3}{32}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$

An engine better have too little steam lead than too much, for the latter may cause a pound by forcing the piston ahead with a blow instead of gradually. This is especially true for a condensing engine where the compression is low.

If an engineer could have a valve gear diagram of his engine mounted on a board on the wall, showing the ports of the cylinder, cutting edges of the valves, their lap, lead and extreme travel, also the throw of the wristplate and the motion of the pins with the position of the governor rods and cams, distance between valve centers, etc., it would help him to keep the valve gear in good order.

The diagram shown in Fig. 203 represents a double eccentric wristplate motion. In this the steam and exhaust valves can be set independently of each other. Release and compression can be adjusted most advan-

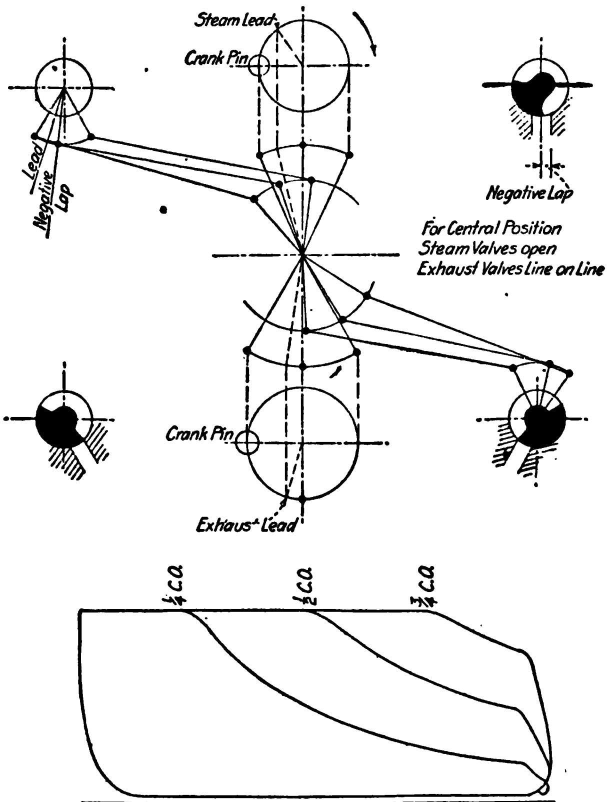


FIG. 203.—Double eccentric wristplate motion and indicator diagram.

tageously, as shown in the indicator diagram. For long range cut-off both steam valves will be open, or they will have what is called negative lap, with the wristplate in the central position. The governor must always trip the valve gear at the end of the stroke, otherwise steam will blow through into the exhaust port when the engine is started or takes steam full stroke. The cut-off can be extended to $\frac{8}{10}$ of the stroke. It is not advisable to go beyond that, for live steam might go to waste through the exhaust. The steam wristplate in this valve gear is, of course, superfluous; it is a convenience in starting and handling the engine, but, otherwise, it is an unnecessary

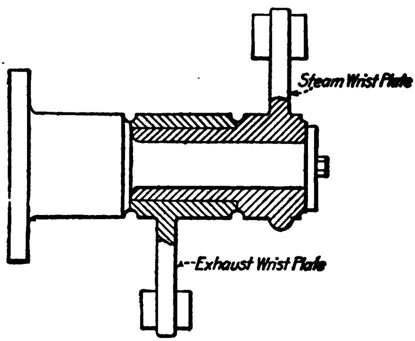


FIG. 204.—Bearing for double wristplates.

adjunct, which requires lubrication and looking after, especially, if the exhaust wristplate has its bearing on the hub of the steam wristplate, as shown in Fig. 204, the way it is done on many engines.

The valve-gear diagram, Fig. 205, shows parallel motion used for the steam valves and a wristplate for the exhaust. Advocates of this system claim that the wristplate motion brings the exhaust valve almost to a stop during the period of admitting steam to the cylinder; others asse t that the live steam pressure on the almost stationary valves will make them stick to their seats, and that the rapid motion in opening imposes an excessive strain on the valve gear parts. Sometimes, instead of using the heavy wristplate, which is objectionable on

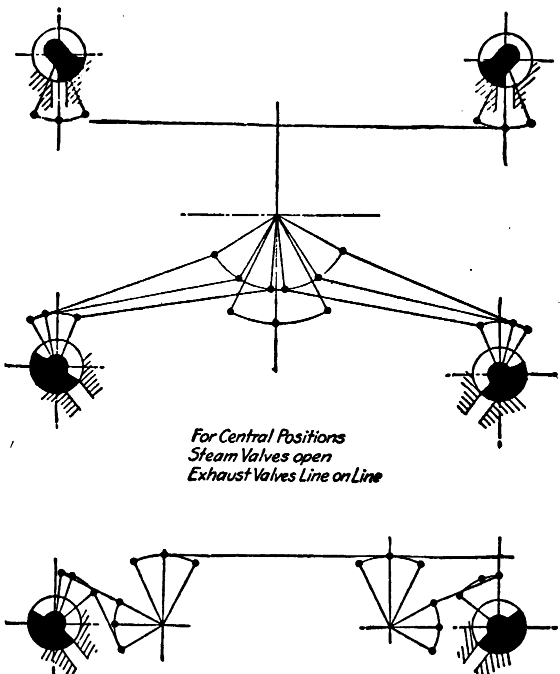


FIG. 205.—Double eccentric valve gears with parallel motion for steam and wristplate or bellcranks for exhaust.

high speeds, each exhaust valve is driven by a bell crank and link, shown below the wristplate motion in Fig. 205. The weight and inertia are probably reduced in this design, but the number of parts has been increased, and it does not seem to be much of an improvement.

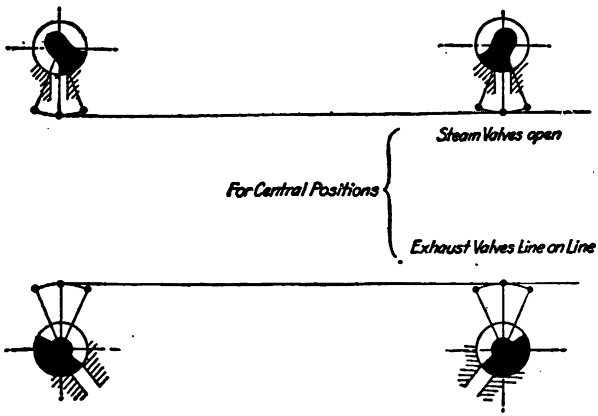


FIG. 206.—Parallel motion valve gear.

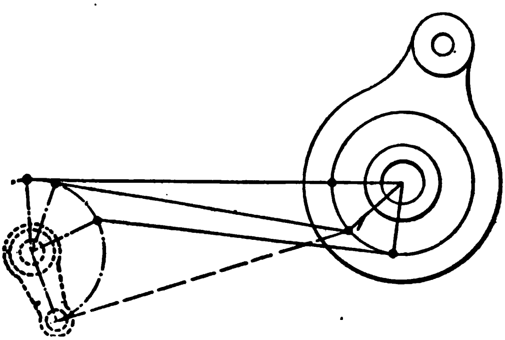


FIG. 207.—Exhaust lever dropped down out of position.

For high speeds the parallel motion shown in Fig. 206 appeals to the exacting engineer. There are no unnecessary wristplates, bell cranks or links used. The motion of the exhaust levers is, like that of the rocker arm, easy and gradual, they are always moving, there are no sudden jerks or stops, and the exhaust valves are not likely to stick to their seats.

In making adjustments of the parallel-motion gear it must be borne in mind that the valves at the head end of the cylinder are affected by changes made in the setting of the valves at the crank end, at least as far as the shortening or lengthening of the parallel rods are concerned, and that they must be adjusted to their original position unless

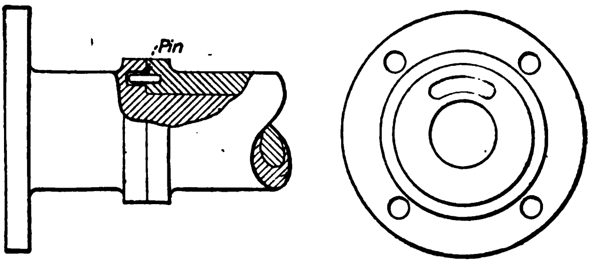


FIG. 208.—Pin in wristplate to prevent excess of travel.

a change of them is also desired. When a change is made in the length of the steam-valve rods, the dashpot rods must also be adjusted; an oversight in this direction may result in a broken bonnet or other trouble.

It will sometimes happen on the wristplate motion that the wristplate is moved over too far by hand and the exhaust lever drops down, as shown in Fig. 207. If this occurs without being noticed, the engine will perform some strange antics, when the steam is turned on and very likely something will be broken or twisted. As a precaution against this, a pin is screwed into the back of the wristplate hub which works in a slot of sufficient length, either milled or cored in the face of the wristplate stand, as shown in Fig. 208. The slot and pin will prevent the wristplate from oscillating too far on either side, but, of course, the operator must be careful in adjusting the length of the hook rod or eccentric rod; otherwise the pin may be sheared off. There must be some play allowed to guard against accidents.

CHAPTER XIV

ROD ENDS AND BONNETS

Threads must be protected. Troublesome designs. Good designs. Hardened pins. Gage for valve rods. Bonnet and valve stem without stuffingbox. Renewable bushing for valve stem. Metallic packings for valve stems not a success. Plastic soft metal packing. Keys for steam arm. Inside arm.

THE ends of the valve rods must be turned and the right- and left-hand threads cut between centers on a lathe. To do this work on a screw machine or turret lathe would be detrimental to the valve gear, since the

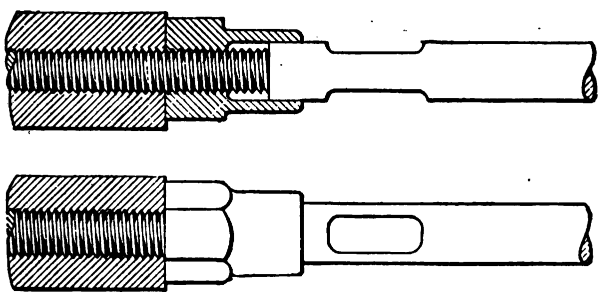


FIG. 209.—Sleeve nut for valve rod.

threads would not be in line with one another. The rods must fit well in the stub ends and the face of the check nuts must be square with the thread. Special nuts turned and threaded in a lathe should be used, and they should have a sleeve, as shown in Fig. 209, to protect the thread on the rods from getting bruised. They should be case-hardened. Commercial nuts are not fit to be used in this class of work. Careful attention should be paid to these small details on which much of the life of an engine depends.

Some of the older designs of stub or rod ends, shown in Fig. 210, are troublesome. The one marked *A* is made of bronze, in two parts bolted together. The only way to adjust it for wear is to remove the cap and reduce

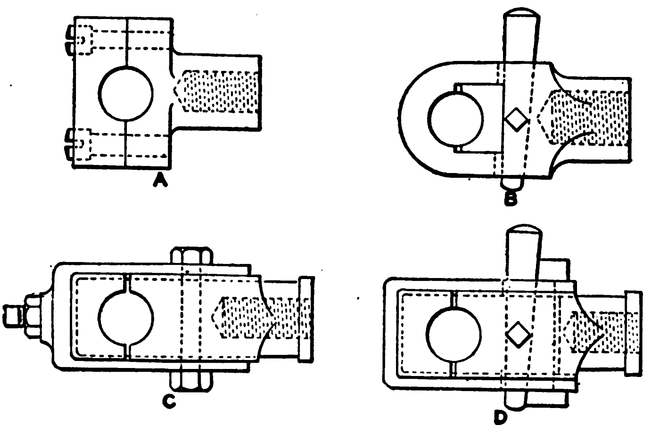


FIG. 210.—Old style stub ends.

it by filing or scraping; this is the worst thing ever devised for the purpose. The stub end *B* is made of bronze, and is provided with a loose half-box, adjusted by a steel wedge. Since most stub ends act by pulling, the greatest wear will be on the body itself, a renewal of which is rather expensive. That shown at *D* consists of the main part and cap, made of brass and held together by a steel strap with gib and key—a complicated and troublesome construction. *C* is of the same order except that it has a bolt instead of the gib and is adjusted by a set-screw on the top, which is a good feature.

The stub ends shown in Fig. 211 are of modern design, are suitable for higher engine speeds, and the adjustments are simple. That at *E* is made of bronze, with a loose box and wedge which may be graduated for accurate adjustment. There is but one objection to this design—the wear of the hole in the stub end itself. The one at *F* is of bronze, with a loose box and screw adjustment in the

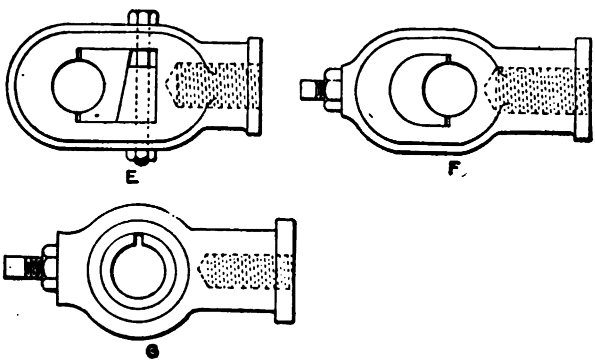


FIG. 211.—Modern stub ends.

top. The body of this stub end is also subject to wear. *G* is made of malleable iron, bronze or forged steel, preferably the last, with a bronze bushing and screw adjustment on the top. A small dowel pin keeps the bushing from turning. The latter is split on one side only, and as it wears the set-screw can be tightened. This is open to criticism from a theoretical standpoint, but it works well in practice.

The valve gear pins are subject to considerable wear. They have a tendency to wear out of round, which makes it difficult to adjust the stub ends properly. They should be case-hardened and ground, which will reduce their wear to a minimum.

As valve settings, through wear and adjustment of the stub ends, undergo certain changes which affect the rod centers, it is advisable to provide a simple check which can be verified at any time. This can be done by marking the valve rods, parallel and eccentric rods, etc., with a center punch any convenient distance, say 3 or 4 ins., from the center of the pins, as in Fig. 212. A gauge can be made for the fixed distance, or a pair of dividers may be used. Simple as this is, it will save a lot of time, trouble and uncertainty.

The bonnets, or as they are often called, the valve

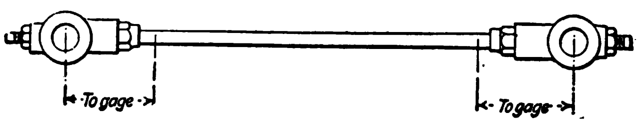


FIG. 212.—Center punch marks for checking wear on rod ends.

brackets, are important members of an engine, since most of the valve-gear parts are supported by them. Some designs give trouble which, with a little care and forethought, could be avoided. The stuffingbox and bearings seem to be the vital points. Attempts have been made to omit the stuffingbox and to substitute a collar and friction disk on the valve stem which bear against the inner surface of the bonnet, as in Fig. 213, where they are beyond the control of the engineer. To lubricate the collar properly is impossible; it will keep on grinding away until worn out. For low pressures and slow speeds the arrangement may have worked fairly well, but it does not answer for present-day requirements.

The combination of bonnet and stuffingbox shown in Fig. 214 is often used. It works all right for a while, but will eventually give trouble in the short bearing back of the stuffingbox. The valve stem must have a close working fit at that place; with the short bearing a groove will be cut around the stem, due to the resistance of the valve in rocking to and fro. A renewable bronze bushing

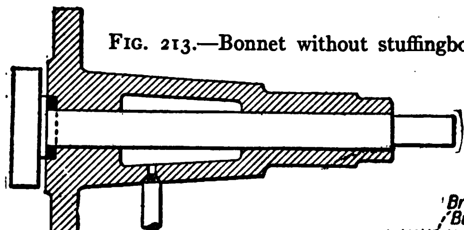


FIG. 213.—Bonnet without stuffingbox.

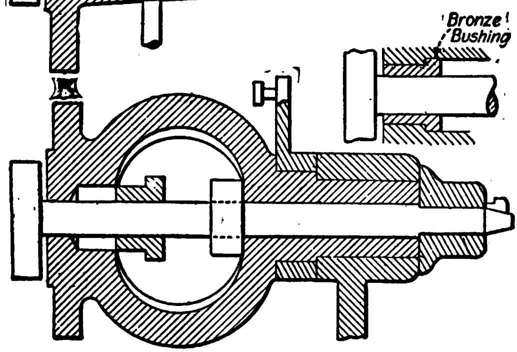


FIG. 214.—Bonnet with stuffingbox and bushing.

equal in length to the diameter of the valve stem should be inserted in the bottom of the stuffingbox, as shown in the detail sketch above Fig. 214. The bushing should be made a close working fit on the stem, avoids the cutting of the stem by the narrow bearing, and is renewable.

The question of packing for the valve stems is problematic. There are metallic valve-stem packings galore on the market, but none of them has met with unqualified success. If a valve stem could be kept central and rotating without any side motion, metallic packing would be all right, but its quick jerky motion combined with a certain amount of vibration gives the steam a chance to work its way through. Plastic soft-metal packing made into suitable rings and forced lightly into the stuff-

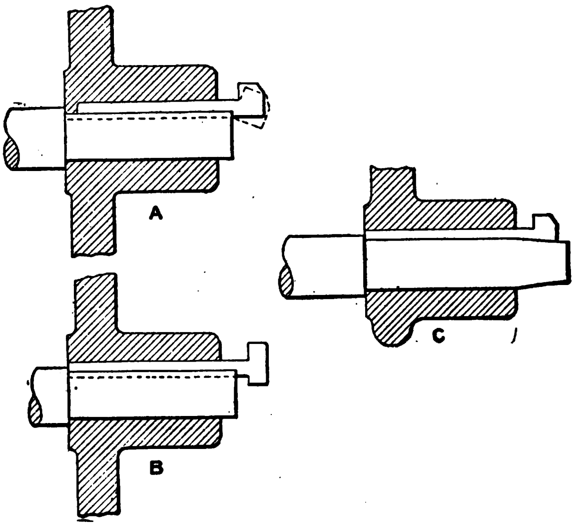


FIG. 215.—Keying of valve stems.

ingbox by the gland is about the best thing for packing Corliss valve stems. Fibrous packing cannot be recommended; it will get hard, wear the stem and need frequent renewal.

Of the three ways of keying the steam arm to the valve-stem shown in Fig. 215, *A* is apt to cause trouble if the key has to be taken out, as the head, being unsupported underneath, will bend over as shown in dotted lines if the key is in tight. The tee-head key shown in *B* is not much better unless two wedges are used to force it back. In *C* the valve stem is extended, with a long taper, giving the head of the key a good support. This is the most approved method.

Fig. 216 shows a design of bonnet in which the steam

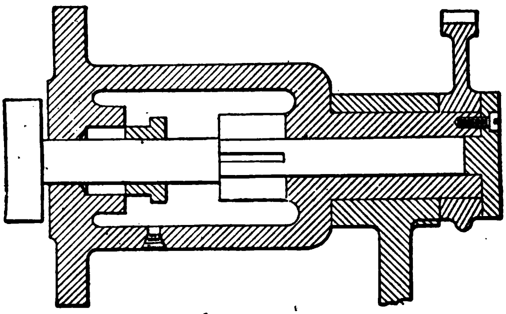


FIG. 216.—Bonnet and valve stem with inside arm.

arm, ordinarily placed at the extreme outer end of the valve stem, is located inside of the bonnet so as to eliminate strains due to the overhanging arm by placing it between two bearings instead of outside of one. Except for large engines the change cannot be recommended, since the arm is less accessible. This design is well suited to heavy engines in rough service.

CHAPTER XV

OILERS

Centrifugal crankpin oilers. Oil holes in crank and crosshead pins. Oil grooves in boxes. Wiper cup. Telescopic crosshead pin oilers. Wiper and tube for crosshead. Oil boat for eccentrics. Oil piping.

It is generally conceded that the crankpin of an engine should be lubricated by means of a so-called centrifugal or center oiler. An outline of the arrangement is shown in Fig. 217. In this way the amount of oil can be regulated at all times. The use of a grease cup on the crankpin will give trouble; the engineer has no control over it as long as the engine is running, and there is always the danger of its breaking off at the shank and hurting someone.

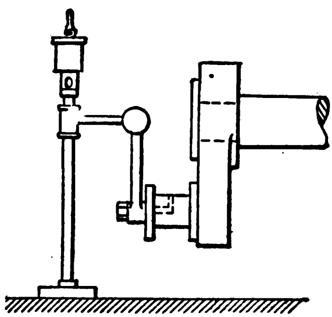


FIG. 217.—Crankpin oiler.

Grease and oil together should never be used on a crankpin for if any grease gets into the oil-grooves and split of the boxes, the oil cannot spread out properly over the bearing, and very likely the pin will get hot. As soon as it gets too hot the grease will melt and run off, and at the same time its lubricating quality will be destroyed. It is better to keep grease off where oil is used.

An enlarged view of a centrifugal crankpin oiler is shown in Fig. 218; *A* shows a short pin with one hole in the middle, pointing inward to the center of the shaft.

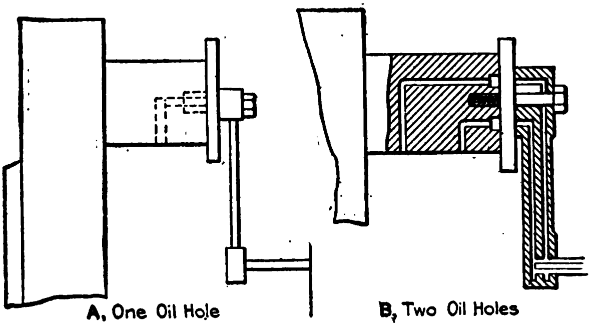


FIG. 218.—Centrifugal crankpin oiler.

If the pin is long and two holes are desired, each must have a separate oil supply, as shown at *B*. The two holes must not be connected, otherwise the first one will take nearly all the oil and none will reach the other. The reason for turning the hole toward the center of the shaft is obvious, if we consider the four positions of the crankpin shown in Fig. 219. The pressure transmitted from the piston to the crankpin affects, during one revolution, only about three-quarters of the circumference, as indicated in heavy lines in the sketch. The part of the pin shown in light lines hardly ever comes in contact with the boxes, and since it offers the least resistance to the flow of the oil, the oil hole should be located within its limits. The most convenient direction is toward the center of the shaft, which makes it right for the engine running over or under. On crankpins with the oil hole drilled toward the outside oil can flow through only when the hole passes the split in the boxes near the upper and lower centers, in which case the centrifugal force will throw most of it against the rod

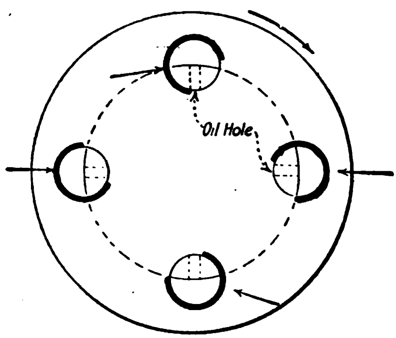


FIG. 219.—Crankpin exposed to wear.

and out at the sides without taking effect in the pin or the boxes. Pins oiled in that way require a large quantity of lubricant. Incidentally, the sketch shows that a crankpin will wear almost entirely on one side provided the engine runs always in the same direction.

The crosshead pin should have the oil hole on the top, as shown in Fig. 220. The upper and lower sides of the pin should be flattened for two reasons: First, to make the oil spread over the length of the pin and, second, to prevent the brasses from wearing shoulders on the pin, owing to the oscillations of the connecting-rod. On large engines with heavy rods, where the wear is considerable, the amount of flat must be carefully determined. If the oil supply is liberal, as it will be if a continuous oiling

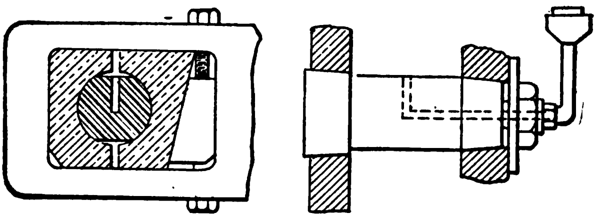


FIG. 220.—Oil hole in crosshead pin.

system is installed, oil grooves in connecting-rod boxes are superfluous; but where the oiling is done by drop feeding from oil cups, grooves will improve the distribution of the oil. In crankpin boxes lubricated by means of a center oiler, the grooves should run crosswise, as shown at

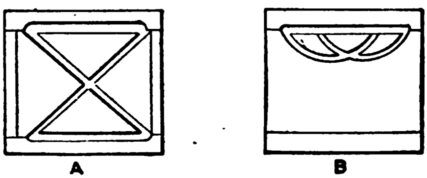


FIG. 221.—Oil grooves for crankpin and crosshead pin boxes.

A, Fig. 221, while the crosshead pin boxes should be grooved only on the upper side, as shown at *B*. The object of oil grooves is to distribute the lubricant over the width of the boxes and to retain part of it for a while. It must be borne in mind that they are also likely to collect dirt, which must be removed from time to time, otherwise they will be worse than useless.

Efficient oiling of the crosshead pin is sometimes quite a problem; although it needs less than one-half the oil that a crankpin requires, it is much more difficult to get the lubricant to the place where it does the most good. On slow-speed engines it has been customary until a few years ago to use a wiper cup which would take a drop of oil at the end of each in- or out-stroke from a pipe con-

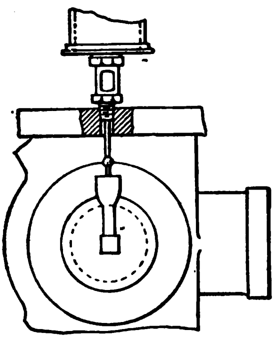


FIG. 222.—Wiper cup.

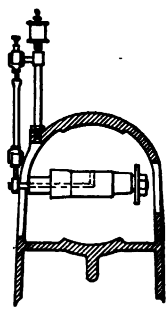


FIG. 223.—Telescope crosshead pin oiler.

nected to a sight feed oiler, as shown in Fig. 222. If the oil is not watched carefully and its flow well regulated it will be thrown over engine and floor.

Telescopic crosshead pin oilers are used to a large extent, they seem to give great satisfaction in some places and a lot of trouble in others. The opinion of engineers as to their reliability and usefulness is divided. When new and applied in the correct way they work so well that an engineer will almost forget there is such a thing as a hot crosshead pin, but in the course of time some parts will wear out and the apparatus becomes unreliable. It is usually less expensive to replace the worn parts with new ones than to try to repair them. There are telescopic oilers which will give good service if well cared for and the proper kind of oil is used others are so poorly designed and badly made that they will give continuous trouble.

A telescopic crosshead pin oiler used on a great many engines is shown in Fig. 223; it seems to be one of the best and most reliable oilers of its kind, can easily be taken apart and cleaned. The principal trouble with telescopic oilers is leakage; the reciprocating motion interferes with the steady flow of the oil, which is thrown fore and back and will ooze out at the joints in spite of the best attention. Next, the sliding of one tube inside of another acts like a pump, the up-and-down movement of the outer tube draws in air and forces it out again, which also interferes with the flow of the oil and will even at times throw it out altogether. To prevent this ball check valves, held on their seats by springs, are used in some instances which makes the device more complicated and its action uncertain. The tubes wear rapidly in places where grit and dirt gets on them and so do the joints.

The most reliable way to oil a crosshead pin is by means of a wiper and tube as shown in Fig. 224. The device consists of a brass tube, closed at both ends and suspended from the upper part of the guide by means of two short pieces of pipe. One of the supports is threaded for an oil cup. A wiper cup of sufficient height is provided for the crosshead pin. There are a number of small holes drilled in each end of the brass tube on the upper side, so that any oil that oozes out will run over the tube and hang in drops on the under side, where the lip of the wiper cup will wipe them off and lead them to the pin. The hole in the crosshead pin must point upward, otherwise no oil will get there. The height of the wiper cup should be at least 3 in. more than half the diameter of the pin. This seems

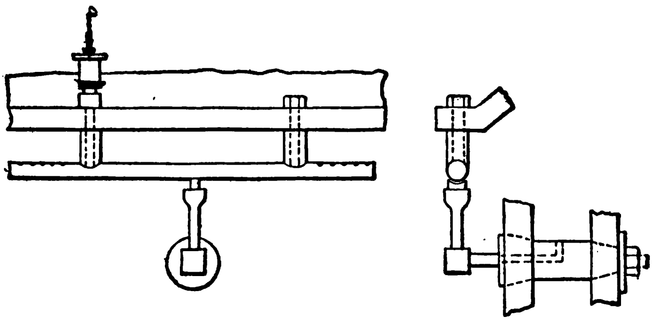


FIG. 224.—Oiler for crosshead pin.

to be the most reliable oiler for the crosshead pin; everything is in plain view of the engineer and under his control.

Telescopic oilers have also been used quite extensively on eccentrics, but after some sad experiences with them the old time oil boat has come into its own again. To

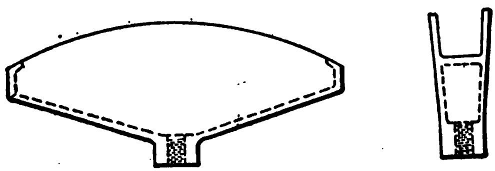


FIG. 225.—Oil boat for eccentric.

make an oil boat effective it should be made very deep, so that no oil can escape or be thrown out. The sides should be very high in the middle, as shown in Fig. 225, to protect the oil from the suction of the flywheel. The oil boat shown in Fig. 226 is too shallow, the oil will run from one end to the other according to which way the eccentric tilts. Oil boats of the shallow kind are used quite frequently and are likely to give more or less trouble unless a continuous stream of oil is used, in which case an efficient guard must be provided to catch the oil that is thrown off.

Sometimes grease is used to lubricate eccentrics, with

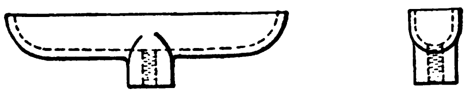


FIG. 226.—A too shallow oil boat.

good results. Two cups should be used on every eccentric to avoid trouble if one should get out of order.

If a gravity oiling system is used on an engine care must be taken to use pipe that is free from scale on the inside. Seamless drawn brass tubing is best for this work. All bends should be made to a long, easy radius, and there should be sufficient tees, crosses and unions, so that the pipes can be readily cleaned, if they should get clogged. Black-iron pipe or galvanized pipe will cause trouble on account of scale.

CHAPTER XVI

RECEIVERS

Size of Receivers. Safety valves must be used. Arrangement for compound engines. Reheaters. Vertical receiver with copper coil. Air must not accumulate. Vibration of pipes causes leaks. Designs for horizontal reheaters.

On compound engines trouble may be experienced with the receiver, which is often too small to give a good steam distribution and cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder, is treated as inferior and superfluous, and is made without regard to strength and efficiency. Accidents to receivers are multiplying, and it is about time that they were watched more closely. They should be of ample size—that is, from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 times the piston displacement of the low-pressure cylinder. This ratio should be carried out on cross-compound and tandem compound engines alike. It is a mistaken idea that tandem compound engines do not need a receiver.

The piping to and from the receiver, the receiver itself and also the low-pressure cylinder should be made strong enough to carry the full boiler pressure—not as a working pressure, but for emergency. The old way of making low-pressure cylinders of light weight and also light receivers and pipe connections is extremely dangerous, for, if anything happens to the high-pressure steam valves or their gear to prevent closing of the valves, steam under full pressure will blow into the receiver through the high-pressure exhaust valves when they open. Every receiver should be provided with at least one safety valve, not a small relief valve to indicate when the receiver pressure has reached the danger point, but one that has an opening about three-fourths the area of the high pressure exhaust; or better, it might have two safety valves of the locomotive type, with large pipe connection to the outside of the building.

A vertical receiver with the high-pressure exhaust

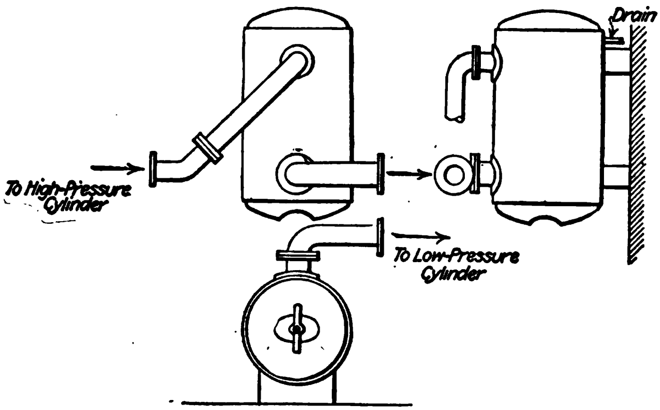


FIG. 227.—Horizontal receiver connections.

entering near the bottom and the low-pressure steam pipe leaving at the top is a good arrangement, but there may be occasions when a horizontal receiver would be more convenient. The advantages of the vertical receiver lie in the ease of draining and of reheating, if this be necessary; its disadvantage in the fact that it cannot be located very conveniently, unless there is a basement that affords sufficient headroom under the engine room. There are no objections to the horizontal receiver, if well drained.

The arrangement shown in Fig. 227 can be recommended for cross-compound engines. The receiver is located in the basement sufficiently low for the exhaust pipe from the high-pressure cylinder to be connected to a flange on the top at one end and for the low-pressure steam pipe to be connected to another nozzle at the other end. Any condensation carried over from the high-pressure cylinder and the water that accumulates from condensation in the receiver itself will collect in the bottom, so there will be no danger if it should slope toward the end at which the high-pressure exhaust enters, where a large drain pipe should discharge the water into a trap. The receiver should be made of steel plates to conform with the specifications adopted by the American Boiler Manufacturers' Association, and the heads should be dished to a radius equal to the diameter of the shell. One of the heads must be provided with a standard manhole. The nozzles should be of heavy design and riveted to the shell, with calking strips under the flanges. The seam of the shell should be made on the upper half, never at the bottom. The receiver may be supported on concrete piers, but not bolted down, with allowance for expansion and contraction.

Reheating receivers are sometimes called for and installed, but except on pumping engines, the reheating part is usually put out of service. If a reheater is desirable, the vertical receiver gives the best results.

The reheater should consist of a copper coil, the steam to enter at the top; the lower end connected to a trap. The area of the reheating surface in square feet should be equal to about twice the volume of the low-pressure piston displacement in cubic feet. The exhaust from the high-pressure cylinder should enter at the bottom, the nozzle for connection to the low-pressure cylinder to be near the top. Fig. 228 shows a vertical receiver with copper coil, the top consisting of a flange riveted to the shell with a cover bolted on, so that the reheating coil can be inspected and removed if necessary. Both the flange and cover should be of cast steel, thoroughly annealed, of about 60,000 lbs. tensile strength. Cast iron must not be used for receiver heads, as it will give trouble. A drain in the bottom will take care of any condensation

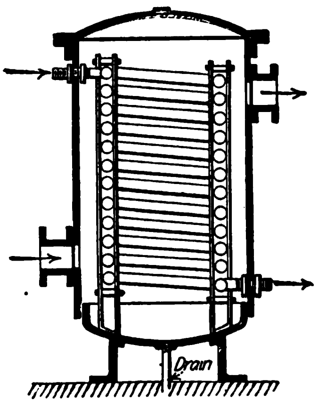


FIG. 228.—Vertical receiver with copper coil.

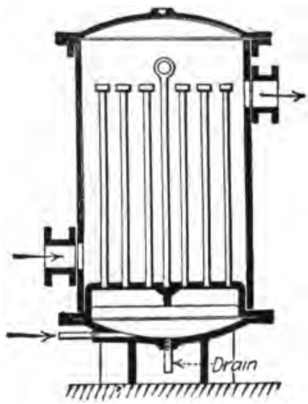


FIG. 229.—Vertical receiver with straight pipes.

Reheating pipes or coils in receivers act about the same as radiators in rooms; in fact, they *are* radiators and subject to similar conditions. Unless properly vented, air contained in the steam will accumulate in certain places and materially reduce the heating capacity. For this reason the arrangement shown in Fig. 229 should be avoided. The vertical tubes, closed at the top with a cap and screwed into the plate at the bottom, will soon fill with air; in fact, there is no way of exhausting the air from them except by a vacuum pump. Having no vent, their heating effect will be destroyed.

If the tubes are arranged as shown in Fig. 230, the air can be forced out so that they will have the full heating effect, but the trouble with this design is that the

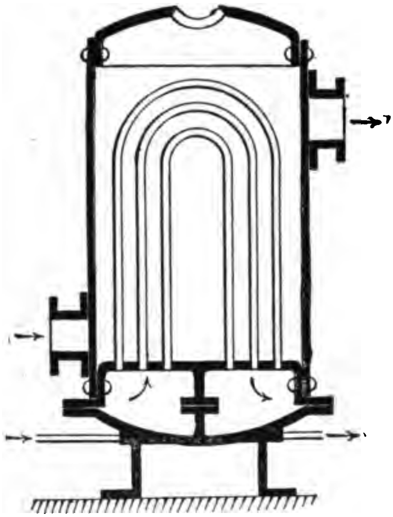


FIG. 230.—Air is easily forced out of the tubes.

tubes are liable to get loose in the plate on account of the constant vibration caused by the inrushing and outrushing steam; if once loose, they will soon begin to leak. There is no saving in steam in a reheater with leaky tubes.

In a horizontal receiver a copper coil seems to be out of place; water will constantly collect in the lower parts and there may be trouble on account of this; the drainage of the coil will be badly impaired. Therefore one of

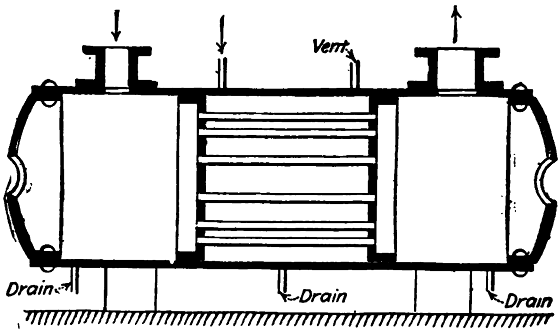


FIG. 231.—Horizontal reheating receiver.

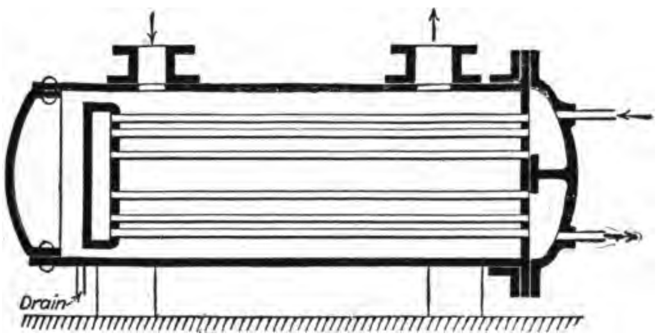


FIG. 232.—Independent pipe system for horizontal receiver.

the two designs shown in Figs. 231 and 232 may be adopted.

Fig. 231 shows two flanged steel heads riveted inside to the shell of the receiver, with steel tubes expanded in place. Brass tubes must not be used, as they will give trouble on account of unequal expansion. Both ends should have a manhole, so that the inside of the receiver and the ends of the tubes can be inspected. Fig. 232 shows another design with horizontal tubes which may freely expand and contract.

CHAPTER XVII

FOUNDATIONS

Weight and area are the principal requirements. Piles supporting foundation. Shallow foundation. Standard construction for direct-connected engine. Danger of ruining an engine by rough usage at the start. Setting the templet. Squaring the center-lines. Foundation bolt boxes. Bolts suspended from templet. Pockets for nuts and washers. Forms for concrete. Mixing of concrete. Filling the forms.

AFTER the most advantageous location for the engine, size of engine room, etc., have been determined, the next thing to be considered is the foundation—its depth, size,

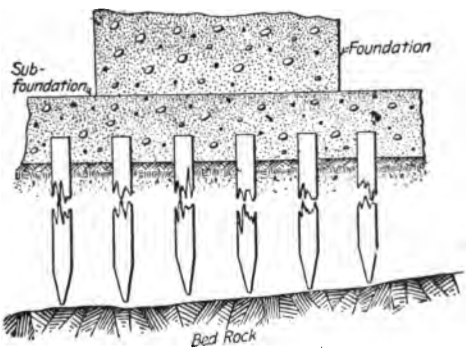


FIG. 233.—Piles supporting foundation.

weight and the material of which it is to be built. The depth depends largely on the ground; on general principles it is better to spread the foundation over a wide surface than to make it narrow and deep; weight and sufficient area for a good hold on the ground are the principal requirements. If bedrock can be reached within a reasonable distance that, of course, is to be preferred, but in most cases it is more likely that the ground is clay or sand, in which case a subfoundation of concrete 12 to 18 ins. thick should be spread over an increased area on which to build the foundation proper. If the ground consists of mud, piles must be driven and covered with a substantial layer of concrete. The piles may be driven about 3 ft. apart to hardpan or bedrock, as shown in Fig. 233, their tops trimmed to an even height and a concrete footing not less than 24 ins. thick spread over the surface. The construction can be much strengthened by placing steel rods crosswise in the concrete near the top and bottom. The upper surface must be left rough to make a good bond with the engine foundation. The piles themselves may be made of reinforced concrete if properly designed.

DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS OF FOUNDATIONS

Size of Engine	Main Bearing				Outer Bearing				Depth		Weight of Foundation	Weight of Engine and Wheel
	Length		Width		Length		Width					
In.	Ft.	In.	Ft.	In.	Ft.	In.	Ft.	In.	Ft.	In.	Lbs.	Lbs.
12×30	18	0	5	0	8	0	4	0	5	0	92,000	24,000
14×30	19	0	6	0	9	0	4	0	5	0	114,000	30,000
16×30	20	0	6	0	9	0	4	0	5	6	128,000	34,000
18×30	20	0	6	0	10	0	5	0	6	0	160,000	38,000
18×36	22	0	6	0	11	0	5	0	6	0	180,000	44,000
20×36	22	0	7	0	12	0	5	0	7	0	190,000	55,000
22×42	24	0	7	0	13	0	5	0	7	6	280,000	70,000
24×42	25	0	7	6	14	0	5	0	8	0	320,000	80,000
26×48	30	0	8	0	15	0	5	0	9	0	426,000	100,000
28×48	31	0	9	0	16	0	5	0	9	0	484,000	115,000
30×48	32	0	9	0	18	0	6	0	10	0	600,000	130,000

The weights of both engine and foundation must be taken into account in computing the area over which the subfoundation should extend. Average soil will support about 3 tons per square foot, but to be on the safe side it is best to allow only 2000 lbs. The greatest weight of an engine is located at, and supported by, the bearings, where also the greatest vibration takes place and where the main support in the foundation must be given. Vertical engines, few of which are built now, may be left out of the question, and only the horizontal construction need be considered. The table states the approximate over-all dimensions and weights of foundations for simple, heavy-duty, belted engines and also the weights of the engines themselves. From this table it is seen that the weight of a foundation should be four to five times the weight of the engine, which is considered ample to counteract vibration.

On mushy ground special precautions must be taken to counterbalance the inertia of the reciprocating parts, otherwise the rocking motion may be communicated not only to the engine house, but to all the buildings in the neighborhood on the same swampy soil. For direct-connected engines about 33 per cent should be added to the weights of engines and foundations given in the table, and the piers for the outer bearing and the generator must be connected at the base to the main foundation, giving them a broad bearing on the ground. If the depth of a foundation for a certain size of engine is made less than stated in the table, the length and width must be increased to maintain the weight.

In rocky ground or in places where water is close to the surface or sewers interfere with the work, it is often cheaper and more convenient to make a foundation shallow and extend it over a wide surface, than to make it deep. To give a shallow foundation sufficient strength it should be reinforced, for which purpose old rails, I-beams,

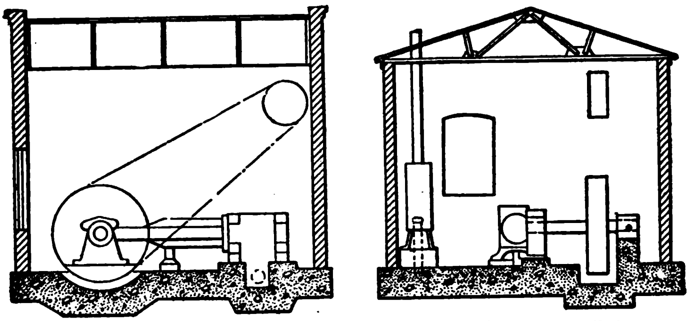


FIG. 234.—Shallow foundation supporting engine and building.

angles or bars may be used to advantage. A little rust on them will do no harm, but they must be free from mud and dirt. The foundation bolts must reach all the way through, with the washer on the under side.

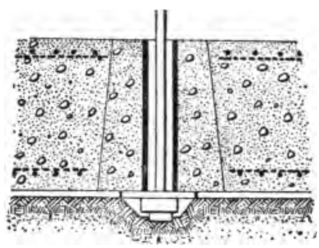


FIG. 235.—Hole in foundation for washer and bolt.

Fig. 234 shows an example of a very shallow foundation which was built for a 12×30-in. belted engine. It was extended under the whole engine room, supporting even the walls of the building. It was made 24 ins. deep, of concrete reinforced by two rows each, at the top and

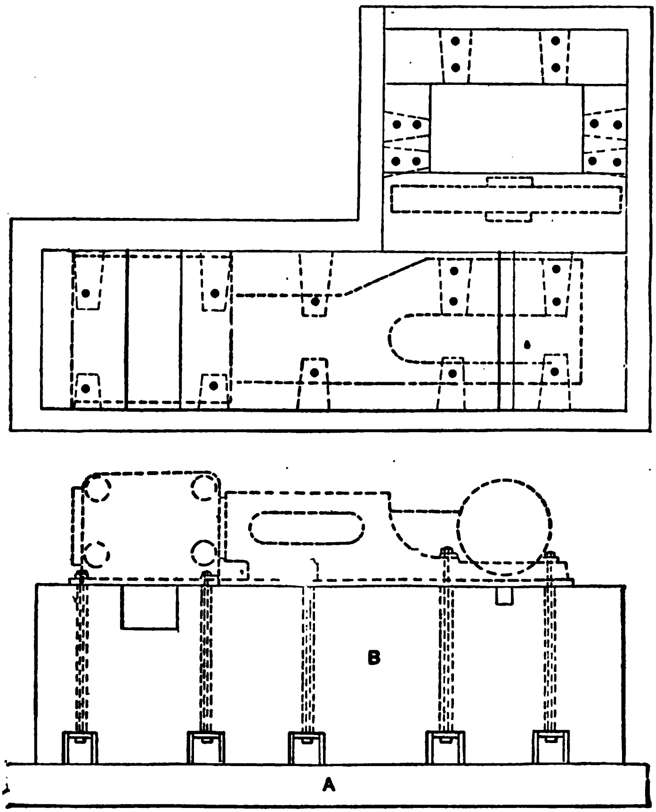


FIG. 236.—Standard foundation for direct-connected engine.

bottom, of ½-in. steel rods laid crosswise and spaced 3 ins. apart. Depressions of sufficient depth were made to form the flywheel pit and the trench for the exhaust pipe. Large holes were left for the foundation bolts and washers, as shown in Fig. 235, which were set later by means of a templet; the holes, which taper toward the top, were filled with concrete. The top of the foundation was finished smooth and forms the floor of the engine room. The reason for the construction was that a large sewer about 4 ft. below the surface of the engine room could not be removed without considerable expense.

Fig. 236 shows a standard foundation for a direct-connected engine. *A* is a slab of concrete which forms the subfoundation, and *B* represents the foundation proper. Some years ago foundations were given various shapes, which sometimes followed the outline of the engine. A favorite construction was to make the sides battered, but now, when foundations are mostly made of concrete, straight lines are followed in all directions. This is done to simplify the forms that have to be built for the concrete.

Erect the Building First

A mistake is often made in having the engine erected before the building for it is completed. As a rule, time is lost on the building and the aim is to make up for it by hurrying the work about the engine. Although an engine will stand a good deal of abuse and will sometimes run under very unfavorable conditions, it is a mechanism designed and built with care to do effective service for a number of years. It is, therefore, not unreasonable to expect that it should be handled with care and not be exposed to dust, dirt and the elements. A sand test is not required, as on a machine gun or cannon, because an engine is not supposed to work under such conditions, but in a nice, clean room, free from dust, rain or sleet. Many an engine is ruined by rough usage at the start.

Assuming, then, that the advice implied in these remarks has been followed and that the walls and roof of the engine room are finished, windows put in, the hole for the foundation dug and the subfoundation constructed, the next thing to do is to locate the center line of the engine, place the targets on the walls or other convenient places and establish a line of strong fishcord from which plumb lines can be dropped to locate the templet, as shown in Fig. 237.

The templet is usually made of 1-in. boards having one long center board (for large engines made of two lengths), with frames for the cylinder and pillow block and cross-pieces for the guide screwed on. The center lines of the engine, cylinder and shaft are marked on the board, blocks of wood are fastened to the frames giving the thickness of the metal at the bolt holes, and the holes for the foundation bolts are drilled through. The under side of the boards constitutes the base of the engine, outer bearing, etc. The templet must be well supported on framework and posts strong enough to carry the heavy bolts and washers. After it is lined up and leveled, the bolts are hung in place with the cast-iron washers at the lower end. The upper ends of the bolts should project about $\frac{1}{2}$ in. above the nuts in order to make sure of having enough thread for full nuts when the engine is put on the foundation. Boxes of $\frac{5}{8}$-in or $\frac{3}{4}$-in boards should be built around the bolts with $\frac{3}{4}$-in. or 1-in. space on each side, giving them sufficient play to allow for irregularities in the castings. They may be made tapering toward the lower end with the object of removing them after the concrete has set, although there is no objection to letting them remain in the foundation. The templet for the outer bearing and, if the engine is direct-connected, that for the generator are located in a similar way, special care being taken to set them level and square with the main templet.

A simple way to square the center line of the shaft with the center line of the engine is to stretch another line across the main line on the same level and adjust it as shown in Fig. 238. Any multiple of the figures 3, 4 and 5

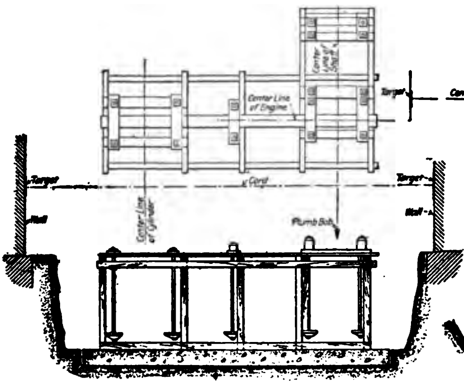


FIG. 237.—Setting the templet.

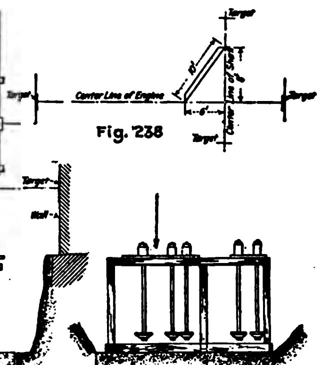


FIG. 238.—Squaring the center line of the shaft.

laid down to any scale will form the two legs and hypotenuse of a right triangle; as a rule 6, 8 and 10 ft. are the accepted standards for lining up an engine; therefore, if two pieces of cord are located 6 and 8 ft. respectively from the intersection of the two lines and distance between the two fixed points is made 10 ft., the two lines will be square to each other. To prevent any error a plank 4 ins. wide and 10 ft. long, pointed at both ends, may be used, with distances of 6 and 8 ft. marked from either end.

This is better than a tapeline or rule. The outer bearing and generator templets are then located by plumbing down to the center lines marked on them. Targets should also be established for the center line of the shaft.

Templets for cross-compound engines are lined up the same way. Parallel center lines are stretched, one for each side of the engine, and the center line of the main shaft is located at right angles to both of them in the manner described. For adjusting the two sides to the same level, a long straight-edge or a transit may be used.

Except on smaller-sized engines and where the founda-

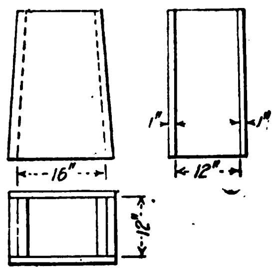


FIG. 239.—Foundation bolt boxes.

tion is crowded against walls or the ground is rocky and hard to excavate, the washers should not be built in the foundation, but located in pockets accessible from the outside. For this purpose boxes, as shown in Fig. 239, will be required; they must be large enough for a person to get into to hold the washers and nuts when the bolts are put in place. The boxes must be secured in position with the holes for the bolts directly under the corresponding holes in the templet. The foundation-bolt boxes are fastened to the templet and lower boxes, the vertical position to be verified by a plumb line.

In erecting an engine much trouble is sometimes experienced if the foundation bolts are cemented in solid before the engine is put in place. There is no need of having the bolts cemented in at all—in fact they should have play in the foundation, so as to accommodate themselves to the holes in the frame and cylinder base. It is well to

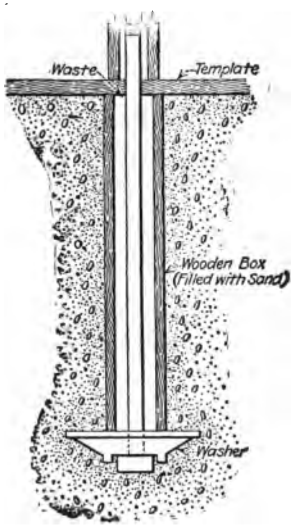


FIG. 240.—Foundation bolt suspended from templet.

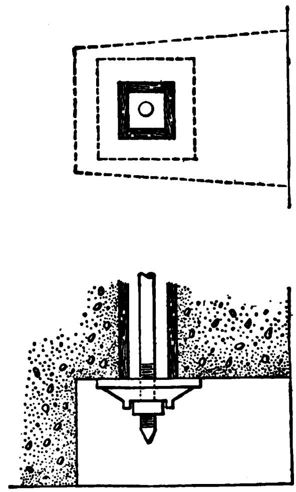


FIG. 241.—Pocket in foundation for washer.

leave about $\frac{3}{4}$ in. play all around, and for bolts 2 ins. in diameter and over a play of 1 in. on the side will be better. The bolts should be long, reaching almost to the bottom of the foundation. In erecting, they are to be suspended from the templet with the cast-iron foundation washers resting on the bolt heads, as shown in Fig. 240. Next wooden boxes of $\frac{1}{2}$-in. or $\frac{5}{8}$-in. boards are built around the bolts and supported on the washers, the top of the boxes to be level with the top of the foundation. The foundation is then built of concrete, or brick laid in cement—preferably concrete. The space in the wooden boxes around the bolts should be filled with sand and some waste put on top to keep out the cement. The sand is filled in loosely so the bolt will yield to one side or the other if necessary. The boxes may be left in the foundation, where they will not do any harm.

Fig. 241 shows the lower end of the foundation bolt and the washer located in a pocket in the foundation. The pocket should be so arranged that it is at all times accessible. In this case the bolt has a long thread with a nut; the end is pointed so it will enter the nut freely. The idea of having these pockets is that the foundation bolts can be inserted after the heavy parts of the engine have been put in place. This is a very convenient method on large frames, where the bolts sometimes project from 2 to 4 ft. and more above the foundation; also, if one should break it can be replaced.

The space around the bolts must not be filled with cement or grouting, but, as previously stated, with sand, sawdust or some other soft material. Anything that will bind the bolt must be kept out of the hole. The only object of the foundation bolts is to hold the engine down tight, so that the friction between the base and the foundation is sufficient to keep it from moving; they should not fit in the holes and be subjected to shear.

The boxes for the flywheel, generator and crank-pits should now be put in place and also those for the trenches for the exhaust pipe and the drain pipes. The form for the foundation should be made of $1\frac{1}{2}$-in. or 2-in. boards running horizontally, well-braced on the outside and, if necessary, held together by means of bolts or wire to withstand the pressure of the concrete and of the tamping, as shown in Fig. 242.

A good mixture of concrete for engine foundations may be made of 1 part of portland cement, 2 parts of sharp sand and 4 parts of gravel or broken stone. The work of mixing the concrete and filling it into the form should be done under the supervision of an experienced mason. Even if the work is rough, it will lead to trouble if only inexperienced help is employed. To prevent sticking,

FIG. 242.—Bracing for concrete forms.

the boards should be made wet before putting in the concrete if the foundation is to be plastered; otherwise grease or soap may be used. Concrete is placed in the form in layers 6 to 8 in. thick and tamped down with a light rammer. If the foundation is not finished in one day, the top layer must be kept wet overnight by covering it with wet rags. The next day the surface must be roughened and a strong mixture of cement and sand used to make a good bond with the next layer. The forms must stay around the foundation for two or three days and on large foundations about a week before they are removed.

On large installations for rolling mills or central power plants the engine foundations are built before the walls of the buildings are constructed, and the center lines and levels are located and the templets set with a transit. In order to avoid carrying the vibrations from the engines into the walls, care must be taken not to connect the foundations of engines and buildings; sand cushions must be provided if they approach one another closely.

The top of the concrete should stop about 2 ins. below the floor line, which includes 1-in. space for grouting. This will locate the base of the engine bed and sole-plates 1 in. below the floor line without any unsightly projections and offsets. The templet can be removed as soon as the foundation is completed, but all the boxes must stay in place until the concrete has set. The foundation-bolt holes must be protected from cement or dirt dropping into them. Pieces of wood can be nailed over the top, or waste, burlap and similar material may be used to close the holes temporarily.

CHAPTER XVIII

ERECTING

Locating targets. Centers in cylinder and guides. Grouting. Erection of flywheel. Oval-ring and tee-head links. Segmental wheels. Flywheel arms. Stresses in the rim of flywheels. Lines for stroke and clearance on guides. Screwing in the piston rod. Excessive clearance is wasteful. Locating the dead centers. Barring holes in rim of flywheel. Eccentrics. Buyer's interest in shipping an engine. Oil guards. Gravity oiling system. Force-feed oil pump for cylinder. Painting an engine.

In erecting the engine the frame is put in place first and leveled. Next, the cylinder and front head, with a gasket between them, are moved to the frame, leveled and bolted on. A plain soft-copper ring of even thickness seems to give the most satisfaction as a gasket; it may

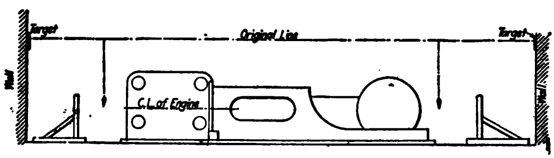


FIG. 243.—Locating center line with aid of targets.

be put in dry or, better, covered with a mixture of oil and graphite. The center line of the engine must be located with the help of the targets. For this purpose two stands made of boards are fastened to the floor—one at the cylinder and the other at the crank end of the frame, as shown in Fig. 243. A fine silk line is stretched between the two as tightly as possible to avoid any sag.

This line must be placed accurately by plumbing down from the original line, and the stands are notched so that the line may be taken off at any time and replaced. Next, the cylinder and guides are adjusted to this line as closely as it can be done by calipering. The line is then removed and centers are established in the rear end of the cylinder and the crank end of the guide by placing strips of wood in them, as shown in Fig. 244, each with a 1-in. hole in the middle covered by a piece of tin. The centers are marked with a pair of centering calipers, as shown; two centering lugs should be placed and machined for this

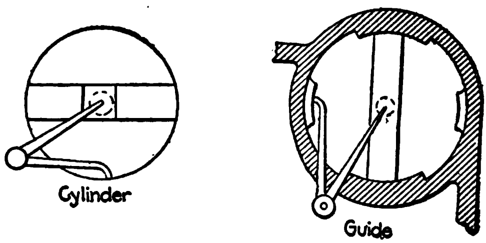


FIG. 244.—Calipering the cylinder and guides.

purpose in every frame. A small hole is drilled with a sharp awl through the centers marked on the tin, and the silk line is stretched through them for a test. If the holes are not in line with the marks on the stands, bed and cylinder must be shifted and wedged up to suit. On long engines a centering strip with a hole should be placed in the piston-rod stuffingbox, and the guide must be checked at the cylinder end for central position. Before placing the frame, cylinder or any other heavy castings on the foundation, it is advisable to check the holes for the foundation bolts and make sure that they correspond with those in the foundation. It sometimes happens that the holes in the frame are not cored all the way through or that they are crooked and must be bored out. Any discrepancy of this kind is much easier made good before the frame is placed in position than after. The safest way is to test every hole with a piece of pipe or a bar of the same diameter as the bolt.

As soon as the engine is aligned and leveled by the use of steel wedges and plates, the foundation bolts are drawn up moderately tight without springing the castings. On large work the anchor bolts should not be put in until the engine is in place. The outer bearing is next placed on its foundation, lined up with the cross-line stretched at right angles to the center line of the engine, as previously described, and adjusted to the same level as the main bearing by the use of a straight-edge. On direct-connected units the sole plates for the generator are placed in position to suit, leveled and squared by the center line of the shaft. The crankshaft is put into the bearings, leveled and squared. In turning the crankpin to either of the dead centers the distance from the face of the crank to the center line of the engine can be checked. Placing the crankpin in the upper and lower vertical positions and measuring the distance from the face of the crank to a plumb-line touching the main center line, will show whether the shaft is level and square with the engine. All four distances must be alike; if there is any difference, the shaft must be adjusted to suit.

The engine is now ready for grouting. A dam of bricks or boards, banked with sand on the outside, is built 3 or 4 ins. from the castings all around the parts to be grouted, and a mixture of one part of cement and one part of sand stirred in water to the consistency of thick cream is poured in. The dam should be about 2 ins. higher than the base of the castings to make the grouting rise well into the inner part of the frame and sole plates. All air pockets must be vented and the grouting stirred while it is flowing to keep the heavy parts from settling. On large frames holes for grouting are sometimes provided in the crank pit, main pillow block and crosshead guides, which are closed afterward by special covers or regular pipe plugs. Ribs are often cast on the under side of sole plates and frames to give them a more substantial grip on the foundation, especially on rolling-mill engines where an end-thrust on the shaft is likely to occur. To plane the under side of bedplates to be grouted is a waste of time; the rougher the surface the better the grouting will hold.

From one to two days is required for the grouting to set; the dam can then be removed and the wedges and plates be drawn out, after which the holes should be filled with cement and the grouting trimmed off all around the outside. In a few days the foundation bolts may be drawn up tight.

Rust and sulphur joints should not be allowed to be put under an engine; they are antiquated, expensive and unreliable—especially sulphur, which gets brittle and is easily affected by oil.

While the masonry is being done, all machined parts of cylinder, frame, etc., should be covered with a coat of cylinder oil; crankpin and shaft must be protected with burlap, and oil holes and handholes should be filled with waste.

The flywheel may now be erected and also the generator if the engine is direct-connected. If the wheel is made in halves, it is advisable to lower one-half into the flywheel pit before the shaft is put into the bearings; it should be blocked up tight against the shaft, the other half placed over it and the two connected by means of the hub bolts, which are generally heated before they are inserted. In cooling they will contract and, with the nuts drawn up tight, will give the wheel a good grip on the shaft. In order to make the hub fit well, it should be bored two or three thousandths of an inch smaller than the diameter of the shaft, and a space of not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. allowed between the halves for clamping. A feather secured in

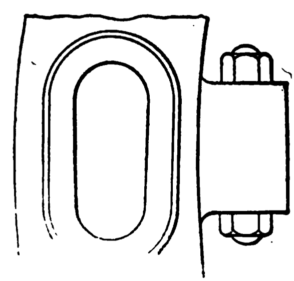


FIG. 245.—Oval ring for flywheel joint.

the shaft and made a good fit on the sides of the keyway in the hub is much to be preferred to a driven key, which should be used only on a solid hub. The rim bolts are put in and tightened and the nuts and bolts are prick-punched to keep the former from backing off. If the rim is held together by links, they must be measured and checked with the recesses to make sure that they will fit. The links are heated and when sufficiently expanded ($\frac{1}{32}$ to $\frac{1}{16}$ in. longer than the recess, according to size) they are put in place.

The old-time links made in the shape of an oval ring, as shown in Fig. 245, are seldom used on new wheels. If welded they are not safe to use; there is never any certainty that a weld is solid even if it appears so on the outside. The rings are sometimes cut out of solid steel, but since they cannot be machined accurately, they can never be made a good fit. Tee-head links, Fig. 246, are the only ones that can be recommended. They should be made of open-hearth forged steel of 0.25 to 0.30 carbon. To use cast steel for this purpose is dangerous for neither

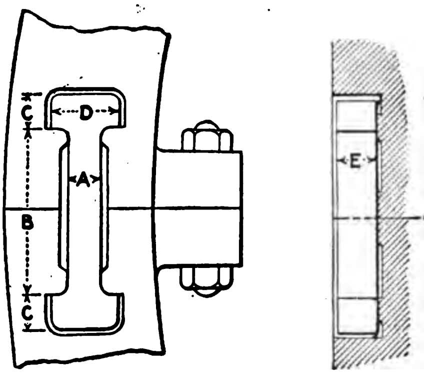


FIG. 246.—Teehead link for square rim wheel.

the quality nor the strength can be relied upon. In order to make the link construction equal in strength to the rim section, the following proportions should be adopted:

$$B = 5A;\ C = A;\ D = 2A;\ E \text{ not less than } A$$

The steel in tension and shear should be 20 per cent of the rim area, and the cast iron in tension and shear should be equal to the rim area. On belt and rope wheels, where bolts are used almost exclusively, the area at the root of the threads in each joint must be not less than 25 per cent of the rim area. The joints in the rim should be planed, and on belt and rope wheels at least one bolt in each joint should be turned and fitted in the hole to prevent side motion. Split joints never make a first-class job.

On a segmental wheel with two solid hub centers on the shaft and arms and rim sections cast separate, the arms are put in first and the rim sections bolted on afterward. It is likely that the wheel was never before in a

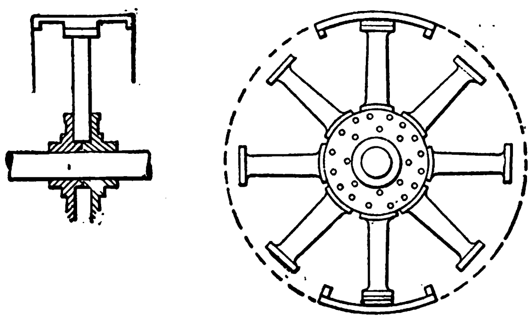


FIG. 247.—Erecting segmental wheel.

vertical position, but was erected on the floor and turned in a vertical boring mill in a horizontal position. It is therefore advisable not to drive home the bolts right away, but to leave about $\frac{1}{2}$ in. between the head and the face of the hub. The bolts and holes should taper $\frac{1}{8}$ in. per foot; straight bolts should not be used on this class of work. With the arms all in place, each segment is put on its respective arm in the vertical position, as shown in Fig. 247, in which it can easily be set to the lines marked in the shop. Two of the bolts connecting the arm and segments must be fitted. It is well to erect the segments opposite each other to keep the wheel as nearly balanced as possible. No bolts connecting the segments should be put in till the last segment is in its place. As the work progresses, a check can be kept on the spaces between the segments by measuring the respective chords, which should be given on the drawing of the wheel. With all the seg-

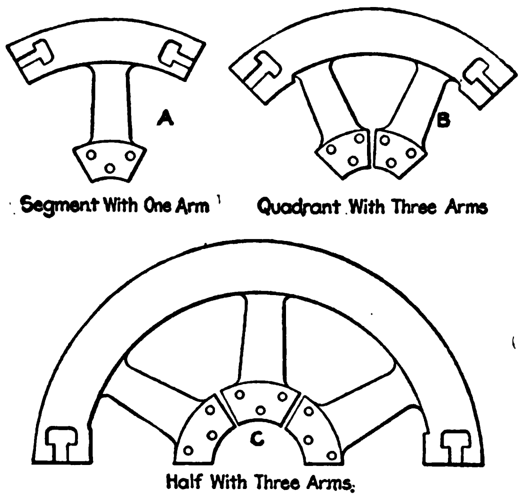


FIG. 248.—Flywheel parts.

ments located, the rim bolts can be put in and tightened and the hub bolts driven home. In a well-designed wheel each arm must be able to support its segment independently of the others and the segments should come together without forcing. Bolts used on flywheels should have a fillet under the head equal to $\frac{1}{16}$ of their diameter.

Shrinkage strains and blowholes in castings and the restrictions of the transportation companies as to size and weight are responsible for built-up wheels. The number of pieces and joints in wheels should be kept as low as possible. On large band wheels it is not feasible to cast the segments and arms together, but on square-rim wheels at least one segment and arm should be cast in one piece. Of the three designs in Fig. 248, *A* shows a segment with one arm, *B* a quadrant with two arms and *C* a half with three arms cast on. There is no connection between the arms at the hub, leaving them free to contract in the mould without offering any resistance

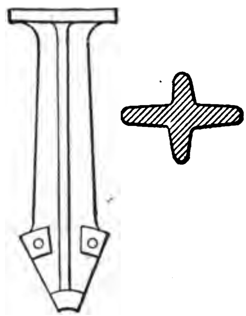


FIG. 249.—Rib section flywheel arm.

to free shrinkage of the rim. It is not good practice to make flywheels with a large number of frail arms; the arms must be in proportion to the rim. Light rims and light arms are gradually disappearing; wherever they are still in use, there is constant danger of accidents. Rib-section arms, as shown in Fig. 249, should be avoided, they may develop cracks near the outer flange and, if run at considerable speed, throw off the air like a fan.

The oval arm has proved to be superior to any other shape and should always be used. Each arm should have three holes for bolting it to the hub centers—two holes, as shown in Fig. 249, are not sufficient. The practice of casting rim and arms hollow cannot be recommended, as the cores might shift in the mould, which would distribute the metal unevenly and make the wheel unsafe. Wheels, like steam cylinders, should be cast of a special grade of close-grained iron, which has no tendency to form blow-holes. Iron showing an open texture is not suitable, even if a test bar of it should show high tensile strength. In fact, test bars hardly ever represent the actual strength of a casting unless they are cut out of solid metal of the same thickness as the segment or arm and cast either in one piece with them or under exactly the same conditions and from the same ladle. Small bars, whether cast on or loose, are of no practical value.

The stress in the rim of cast-iron wheels, resulting from centrifugal force, must not exceed 1000 lbs. per square inch. The simplest kind of calculation that can be made will show whether this figure is exceeded in a wheel or not: Multiply the outside diameter of the wheel in feet by 3.14, which will give the circumference; multiply this by the number of revolutions per second, square the product and divide by 10. As an example, take a 15-ft. wheel running 120 revolutions per minute. On heavy square-rim

$$15 \times 3.14 = 47.1$$

$$47.1 \times \frac{120}{60} = 47.1 \times 2 = 94.2$$

$$\frac{94.2^2}{10} = 887 \textit{ lbs. per square inch.}$$

wheels the bending stresses are negligible, but in belt wheels they must be carefully considered.

The cylinder must be thoroughly cleaned in the ports. Steam and exhaust chests and bore are blown out with steam or air. All core sand left in the casting or grit blown into it in transportation or erecting must be removed. The throttle valve should be put on, making the engine ready for the pipe connections to the boilers. The piston, rod and crosshead should be put in and lined up.

The guide should have marks at each end to indicate the length of the stroke and the clearances in the cylinder by bringing a mark on the crosshead line on line with

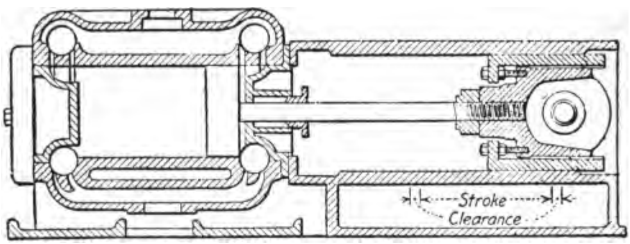


FIG. 250.—Clearance marks on guides.

them, as in Fig. 250. This must be verified by moving crosshead and piston from one end to the other until the piston strikes the heads. If the piston rod has a threaded end, it should never be screwed into the crosshead with pipe tongs; that would leave deep and ineradicable marks on the rod and ruin it. A stout rope should be doubled and wound a sufficient number of times around the rod to give it a good hold, and a bar inserted in the loop; then, using the rod as fulcrum, it is comparatively easy to turn the piston rod. A piece of soft sheet copper inserted between bar and rod will protect the latter from getting bruised. The arrangement is shown in Fig. 251.

The common practice is to give Corliss engines from ¼- to ½-in. clearance at each end of the cylinder. This is

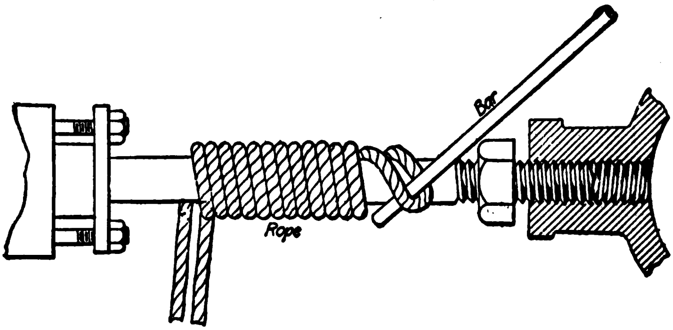


FIG. 251.—Screwing in the piston rod.

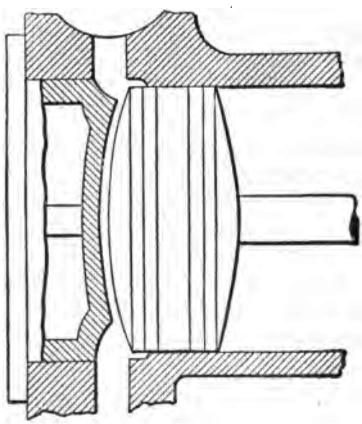


FIG. 252.—Piston with curved surfaces left rough.

too much and results in a loss of steam. Besides, the faces of the pistons and cylinder heads are often not properly machined; in some engines they are left rough, with curved surfaces as shown in Fig. 252. The reason for all this, of course, is to cheapen the product. Large clearances and rough surfaces are detrimental to good steam economy. The loss through clearance and initial condensation often exceeds 25 per cent of the total steam used. On many engines this could be reduced to 10 per cent, making a saving of 15 per cent.

In putting the connecting-rod in place it should be ascertained whether the crosshead pin and crankpin are in line and parallel. For this purpose the crank end of the

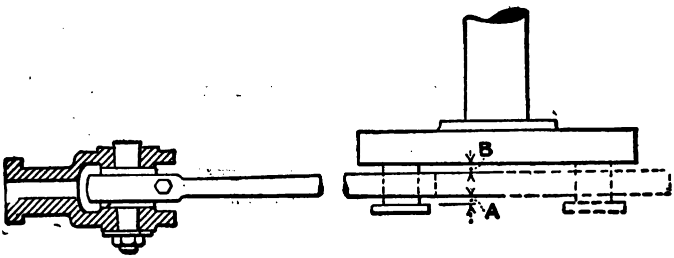


FIG. 253.—Determining if the crosshead and crankpins are in line and parallel.

rod without the boxes is slipped over the crankpin and the crosshead end attached to the crosshead and adjusted tight on the pin by pulling up the wedge. If the two pins are in line the distances *A* and *B* in Fig. 253 will be equal for any position of the crankpin and the sides of the slot in the rod will be parallel with the pin. The crankpin boxes should next be put in and adjusted and the dead centers of the crank located. To do this lay off a certain distance, say 2 or 3 ins., from the line on the guide which indicates the end of the stroke, as shown in Fig. 254, for the crank end. Make a gauge 24 ins. long, shown in detail, and secure a steel pin in the floor near the rim of the flywheel. Now revolve the wheel until the line on the crosshead coincides with the line 2 ins. from the end of the stroke and mark the rim, using the gauge set into a center-punch mark on the pin; then turn the wheel till the line on the crosshead on the return stroke again registers with the line on the guide and make another mark on the rim with the gauge. In dividing the distance between two marks on the rim, a point is located

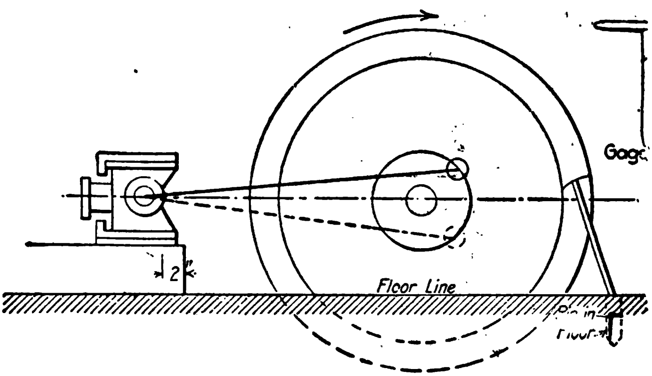


FIG. 254.—Locating the dead centers.

which, when brought to the position in regard to the fixed point in the floor determined by the gauge, will show that the crankpin is on the center at the crank end. The dead-center at the head end is established in a similar way.

To facilitate turning over the engine by hand, the flywheel should have holes cored or drilled in the rim for barring. On square-rim wheels holes $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 ins. diameter or square, according to the size of the wheel, spaced 6 ins. from center to center, should be located in the face of the rim, as shown at *A*, Fig. 255, while on band and rope wheels they are drilled in one side or one of the return flanges is cast with teeth of about 4-ins. pitch. Both these methods are shown at *B* and *C*. A simple cast-iron stand fastened on the floor near the rim will act as a fulcrum for the bar, or a pawl and lever supported by a stand on one side of the wheel may be used with the toothed rim.

Eccentrics are made solid or split according to the service for which the engine is intended. Split eccentrics are almost exclusively used on direct-connected engines.

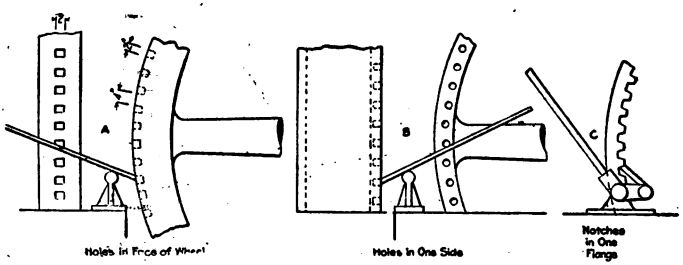


FIG. 255.—Stands for barring the engine over the center.

Corliss-engine eccentrics must not be keyed on the shaft, but should be provided with sets-crews large enough to hold them securely in place without any danger of slipping. The bore should be recessed in the middle about $\frac{1}{16}$ in. deep, as shown in Fig. 256, to allow the eccentric to clear burrs on the shaft, made by forcing the hardened, cup-shaped end of the set-screws into its surface. The straps must have an easy fit on the eccentrics. There is no special advantage in having them babbitted except that when they run hot the babbitt will melt without scoring the eccentric. Cast iron on cast iron makes a good wearing surface if the lubrication is ample and the supply of oil is constant.

Some engine builders do not place the shaft in the bearings in the shop, neither do they adjust the eccentric rods. This is bad practice, dictated by a mistaken idea of saving time. Severe competition is responsible for such methods, and they should not be tolerated. An engine should be finished and erected complete in the factory, with the exception of the flywheel on the larger sizes, and everything should be marked carefully before

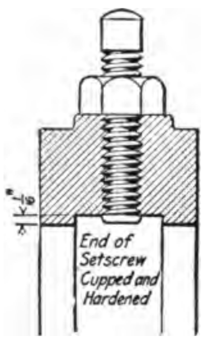


FIG. 265.—Set screw for eccentric.

dismantling. It is unsatisfactory to leave a lot of work to be completed in the field by the erecting engineer. Manufacturers who have not the facilities, especially in the older shops, will sometimes erect one side of a cross-compound engine in one part of the shop and the other side in another. The purchaser should be careful about accepting such work; the best thing for him to do is to employ, as inspector, an experienced engineer, who will make sure that everything is complete before the engine is shipped.

Buyer's Interest in Shipping Engine

The skidding, packing and shipping should also be watched whether the engine is shipped at the risk of the purchaser or not. In case the contract calls for delivery and erection on the purchaser's foundation, it may appear that he is not concerned in that part of the transaction, while, as a matter of fact, it is much to his interest to have the machinery well protected and carefully handled. For instance, if the cylinder and frame are shipped bolted together, the bolts may be unduly strained in transportation and give trouble at some future time. Finished surfaces should not be exposed to the elements or careless handling; they must be coated with heavy oil and protected against damage by boards.

An engine should be provided with ample oil guards over the crank and eccentrics. Large openings in the front of the crank oil guard should be covered with brass-wire gauze of No. 22 mesh to prevent oil from being thrown on the floor. The gauze should be fastened to a frame or door that can be easily removed or opened. Handholes must be provided for feeling the connecting-rod and eccentric straps.

The best material for oil guards is planished steel; it can easily be kept clean and will not show oil or grease like painted plates. Galvanized iron should not be used; the zinc coating is liable to come off in places and spoil the appearance.

A gravity oiling system with filter and storage tank is desirable, for it will save its cost in a short time and give much better results than drop feeding by means of oil cups. It is more advantageous to pour oil in streams over the bearings and pins (thus reducing their tendency to run hot) and to use the oil over and over again than to feed it in small quantities, most of which goes to waste. Before oil fittings or oil cups are put on, the oil holes must be cleaned and the engineer should make sure that oil poured into them will reach the part for which it is intended and not run along the sides of caps and bearings without touching the vital spots.

The most approved method of cylinder lubrication is by means of a force-feed oil pump, which may be driven from the wristplate or other convenient part of the valve gear. On small engines one feed into the steam pipe, 2 or 3 ft. above the throttle valve, is sufficient provided the oil is well diffused by the steam, but on engines with cylinders 18 ins. diameter and over there should be at least three feeds—one into the throttle valve and one into each end of the steam chest near the valves, where the inrushing steam has a chance to spray oil over the length of the port. The hardest places for oil to reach are the ends of the steam valves, especially on low-pressure cylinders. Hand-oil pumps should be provided here for periodical application of oil. Parts of the valve gear that only occasionally require a few drops of oil may be oiled by hand, while others, like the valve rod and rocker-arm pins, may be lubricated by means of grease cups.

Best Paint for the Engine

To get a lasting coat of paint on an engine, the ordinary shop "paint" should be removed, all cavities and holes cleaned and filled and the castings rubbed smooth with sandpaper or pumice stone. An ordinary house painter or decorator, as a rule, has not the ability to do this work; if the paint is to stay on the engine it must be put on by a coach painter. It must not be affected by extreme changes of temperature or by oil and grease. These are severe conditions, which can only be met by excellent work and materials. The varnish especially, of which the engine should receive two coats, should be of the best quality. The color is, perhaps, a matter of taste; dark colors are preferable on account of showing the oil less than lighter shades. Bottle green seems to undergo less of a change when exposed to heat than red or maroon. If any striping is desired, it should be done with gold leaf. Here again, expert work will show; to daub an engine with green, red or yellow stripes is bad taste. On some engines we see even landscapes or other pictures, making them look like circus wagons.

CHAPTER XIX

VALVE SETTING FOR CORLISS ENGINES

Lap lines on valves and port holes. Adjusting dashpots. Adjustment of governor levers. Locating the eccentric. Double eccentrics. Compression. Endplay of valves. Testing governor by hand.

WITH the eccentrics and straps lined up, eccentric rods connected to the straps and rocker arms and the valve-gear parts in position, the setting of the valves can take place. On a wristplate motion, whether driven by single or by double eccentrics, the wristplate or wristplates, as

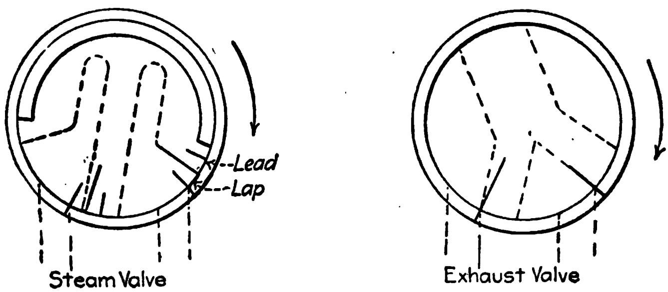


FIG. 257.—Markings of valves and ports.

the case may be, must first be placed in the central position, which is indicated by lines on the hub and stand; the valve rods are then adjusted with all the valves on the lap. There are lines for this purpose on the back of the valves and in the counterbore of the port holes, as shown in Fig. 257, marking the cutting edges and the lap of the valves and the edges of the ports. There should also be a line on the steam valves for the lead; but this is often omitted and causes much trouble if left to the discretion of the erecting engineer, whose aim may be to get a nice-looking indicator diagram, showing a vertical admission line, with the result that a pound will develop in the engine from an excess of lead. Next, the wristplate is moved to the extreme positions marked on the stand, and the dashpot rods are adjusted for length so that with the dashpots in their lowest position the catchplates engage with about $\frac{1}{16}$-in. space between. The nuts on the valve and dashpot rods must be set up tight to prevent their shaking loose when the engine is running.

Adjusting Knockoff Levers

The knockoff levers must be connected to the governor and adjusted. For this purpose the governor is blocked in the lowest working position, as shown in Fig. 258, in which the trip levers should just touch the cams when the wristplate is moved to the extreme positions; no cut-off can take place for this position of the governor; if steam is turned on, the engine will take steam full stroke with the dashpots being moved up and down by the steam levers. As soon as the governor lifts $\frac{1}{8}$ in., cut-off must begin. The cams must be adjusted so that cut-off starts practically at the same time at both ends. This part must be tried several times by hand to make sure that the dashpots come down properly. Advancing the governor to the highest position and working the wristplate forward and backward should result in tripping the valve gear before the steam valves open. This will prevent steam from entering the cylinder. A collar on the spindle keeps the governor from rising above this point. It is next lowered to the safety-stop position and the safety cams adjusted to prevent the valve gear from hooking up, the steam arm and the dashpots remaining stationary. To make sure that the wristplate travels correctly, the hook rod is connected and the eccentric moved around the shaft.

To locate the eccentric in the correct position on the shaft in relation to the crankpin, place the latter on one of the dead-centers and move the eccentric in the direction of rotation around the shaft until the steam valve

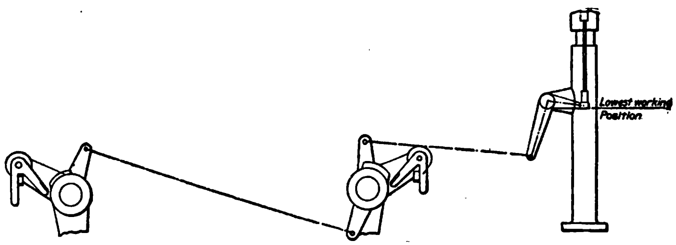


FIG. 258.—Trip levers touching the cams with governor in lowest working position.

that corresponds with the position of the crankpin is on the lead. Now fasten the eccentric and try the other end. If the steam valve at that end also shows the correct lead, the eccentric should be permanently secured, and its position marked on the shaft. On single-eccentric engines, release and compression of the exhaust valves are limited by the lap and lead of the steam valves; therefore, where greater flexibility of the valve motion is desired, double eccentrics must be used. It is safe to state that engines running 100 r.p.m. and over should be provided with double eccentrics to permit setting the valves for an early release and sufficient compression to counteract the inertia of the reciprocating parts.

Function of Compression

Compression weakens the engine, but it serves two purposes: First, to increase the temperature of the steam confined in the cylinder and clearance spaces after the exhaust valve is closed, thus reducing initial condensation and second, to form a cushion for the piston, lessening the shock on the bearing and pins. In the double indi-

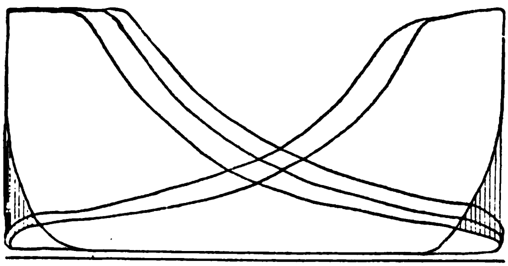


FIG. 259.—Diagram showing cushioning effect of compression and release.

cator diagrams, Fig. 259, the shaded part illustrates the cushioning effect of early release and compression, without which an engine cannot long run successfully. It is quite evident from the diagram that with a later cut-off the cushion is reduced, which accounts for the pound often noticed when a heavy load is suddenly thrown on. With sufficient cushion, an engine does not have to be keyed tight, thus allowing a thicker film of oil to form between the bearing surfaces, which reduces wear.

Before the back bonnets are screwed on, the valves must be checked for end play, which depends partly on the thickness of the gaskets. As a rule, the length of the valves should be equal to the distance between the inner faces of the bonnets and the back bonnets without gaskets. Making the latter of material $\frac{1}{32}$ in. thick will make the clearance $\frac{1}{16}$ in., which is ample. Steam valves expand more than exhaust valves on account of the higher temperature to which they are exposed—a point which must be watched on a new engine. Exhaust valves are more likely to pound if too short, especially on condensing engines. The valves should be well covered with cylinder oil when put in place; graphite dusted over them and the seats is beneficial.

The governor should be examined carefully; all its parts must be free to move without undue friction. A fly-ball or weighted governor running up to 200 r.p.m. can be tested by fastening a handle to the gear shaft and turning it by hand; its action will show whether it will regulate at the predetermined speed. While this is not an accurate test, it will show defects and give a fair idea of the promptness with which the governor will respond to a change of speed. All governor rods must be free on the pins, with at least $\frac{1}{32}$-in. side play. The governor belt must be endless; that is, the joint must be glued. This is usually done in the evening to give it a chance to dry overnight. Belt lacing or metal belt fasteners should not be used.

CHAPTER XX

OPERATION

Warming up an engine. Finding leaks. Short runs in starting. Spare parts and packing material. Tools. Drawings. Indicator piping. Access to indicator must be free. Simple reducing motion. Reducing motion connected to crosshead pin oiler. Inclined plane. Pantograph. Reducing wheels. Checking indicator spring and pressure gage. Pressure losses. Determining the clearance. Indicated horse-power. Several diagrams on one card. Governor regulation. Graduated scale and tachometer to show speed variations. Examine new engine. Crank and crosshead pin boxes must be relieved at the parting. Babbitting boxes. Engine adjustment. Cooling hot boxes. Compounding.

After all the lubricating devices have been put on and tested, the engine is ready to be warmed up. The steam pipe must first be thoroughly drained; next, steam is let into the steam chest either through a by-pass or by opening the throttle about half a turn. Throttle valves over 5 ins. should be provided with by-passes. If water gets into the cylinder it should be drained off through the exhaust by working the valve gear forward and backward by hand. When thoroughly warmed the valves and piston may be tested for tightness. By letting steam into one end of the cylinder and opening the indicator cock at the other, a leak in the piston can be detected; and by closing both steam valves and opening the indicator cocks, a leak in these valves can be noticed. If the exhaust valves leak, it will show by steam blowing out of the exhaust pipe when the valves are closed. A little steam will frequently blow through on a new engine; not much attention need be paid to this unless the leak becomes serious. The governor should now be raised to the starting position and the engine turned over slowly; everything must be watched closely and plenty of oil pumped into the cylinder and poured on bearings, pins and other moving parts.

Adjustments after Short Runs

After running a while the engine should be shut down and all the nuts and bolts about the cylinder examined and tightened. If no other adjustments are found necessary, another start may be made, giving the engine a little more steam and increasing the speed until the dashpots begin to drop and the engine is under the control of the governor. This may be continued for about half a day, which will give everything a chance to get into working condition. A mixture of graphite and cylinder oil pumped at intervals into the steam chest will benefit valves and piston, as stated before.

If everything runs satisfactorily, the engine is ready for a trial run with load, which should be increased gradually. With a light load a new engine should be run either with low boiler pressure or with the throttle partly closed until the valve gear and the dashpots are working freely. The engine may be indicated with a view of adjusting the valves. Of course economical performance must not be expected the first few days after starting.

Before the engineer takes charge of an engine, he should prepare himself for any emergency. Wrenches for the various sizes of nuts should be mounted on a board in a convenient place on the wall; on the same board should be eye-bolts for lifting the main-bearing cap, quarter-boxes and shells, for removing the back cylinder head, piston follower and junk ring, and for taking out the valves. If no spare parts have been furnished with the engine he should see to it that he gets extra sets of cross-head and crankpin brasses with some wedge bolts, a packing ring for the piston and a few follower bolts and nuts. For Corliss engines there should be one spare steam bonnet and one exhaust bonnet with a valve stem for each, an exhaust arm, a full set of catch plates and some springs if any are used on the valve gear.

Sheet-rubber or copper gaskets for joints that may blow out should be kept in stock. There should be an assortment of good files, scrapers and chisels, and a work-bench with a vise and a drawer in which to keep the small tools. Extra pipe fittings and some brass pipe should be provided for small repairs and changes of the oil piping. The builders should furnish detail drawings of all the moving parts with a chart or diagrammatic drawing showing the names and positions of the principal parts of the engine. This the engineer must have, so that no time may be lost owing to misunderstanding if the necessity arises to order quick repairs.

Every engine should be provided with indicator piping. The arrangement, Fig. 260, should show a long-radius elbow cock at each end and a three-way cock in the middle, the most convenient for everyday use, when it is more a question of correct valve setting and average load than of absolute accuracy. For a test two indicators should be used—one of them to be placed at each end of the cylinder with the shortest possible connections. The most direct way is to place the indicators in a horizontal position, with the straightway cocks screwed into the couplings on the short pieces of pipe, as shown in Fig. 261.

Access to the hole in the side of the cylinder must be free; the hole should have beveled or rounded edges,

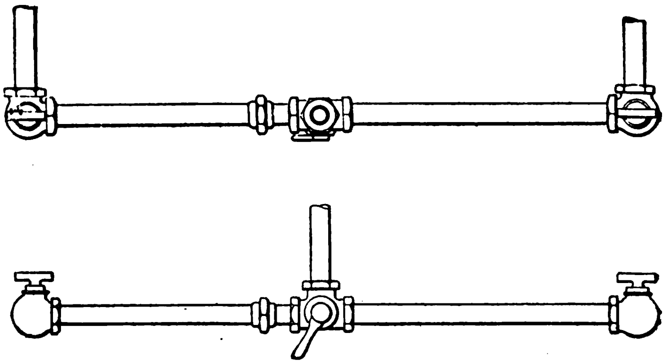


FIG. 260.—Indicator piping.

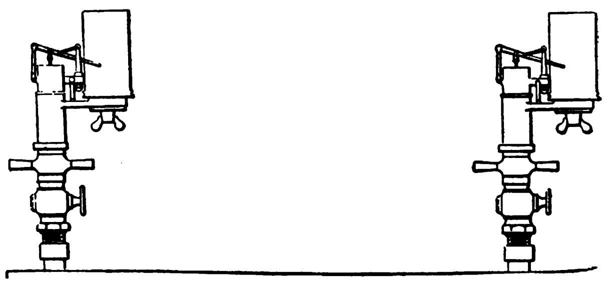


FIG. 261.—Two indicators in horizontal position on the side of the cylinder.

and the nipple should taper on the inside, as shown at *A*, Fig. 262. The piston must not overrun the indicator hole, preventing free access at the beginning of the stroke; neither should there be sharp edges in the cylinder or nipple, as shown at *B*, which will cause a drop in initial pressure in the indicator. These minor details are often lost sight of in indicating an engine. If the horizontal position of the indicators is inconvenient, they may be placed vertically on long-radius elbows turned upward, as shown in Fig. 263 (in which position they are readily manipulated with only a trifling loss in pressure).

Before placing the indicators in position, all pipes,

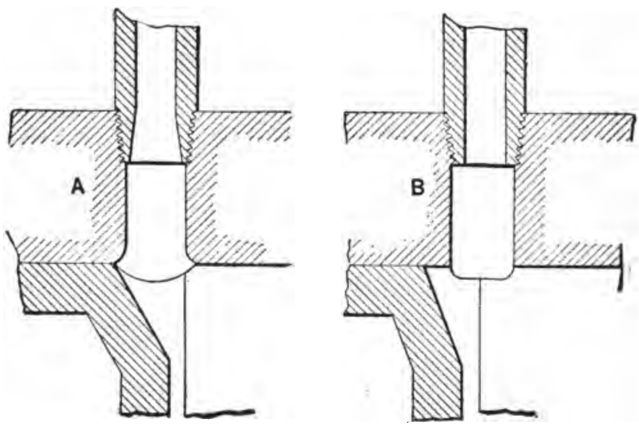


FIG. 262.—Indicator hole and nipple in side of cylinder.

fittings and passages must be blown out to free them from grit, gummy oil or other foreign matter to prevent the instruments being fouled. In long indicator pipes the condensation is often a disturbing factor; the water must always be blown out before a card is taken, otherwise the diagrams will be unreliable. It is evident that, whatever arrangement is adopted there is apt to be some inaccuracy, therefore, the one that is likely to give the least error should be chosen.

An indicator is almost indispensable in an engine room. The medium-priced instruments with inside spring

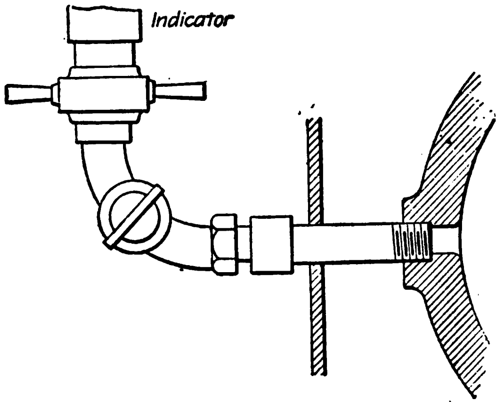


FIG. 263.—Elbow turned upwards to place the indicator in a vertical position.

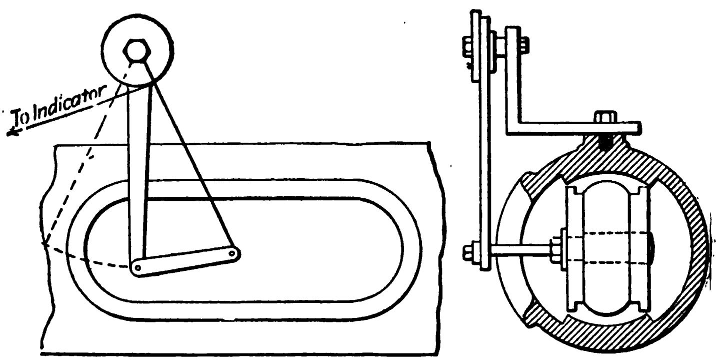


FIG. 264.—Lever reducing motion.

will give fairly good results for everyday use, either with permanent reducing motions furnished with the engine or with reducing motions driven by cords and attached to the indicator. For accurate tests the best instruments, with calibrated outside springs and electrical attachment for instantaneous operation, must be used; the reducing motions must be of the highest order, with the cords running in a straight line to the crosshead.

A simple reducing motion for temporary use may be made as shown in Fig. 264. A bracket made of a bar of

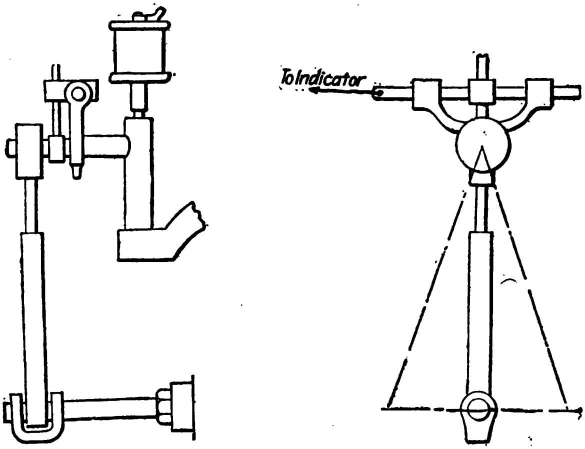


FIG. 265.—Telescopic reducing motion.

flat steel is fastened to the top of the guide; with a wooden lever suspended from a bolt at the upper end. The connection to the crosshead is by means of a horizontal link, also made of a strip of wood, and a sector of the required size to give a motion of about 4 ins. at the circumference is fastened to the lever at the pivot. On high-pressure cylinders the cord can usually be attached directly to the indicator, but on some low-pressure cylinders, on account of their width, a couple of carrying pulleys must be used. If there is no vibration to the bracket and if the bolts are well fitted with brass bushings in the lever and link, the arrangement will give good service. Of course it is not intended for permanent use and does not improve the appearance of an engine.

Something of the same order for a permanent rig is shown in Fig. 265. This works on the telescopic principle and serves the double purpose of crosshead-pin oiler

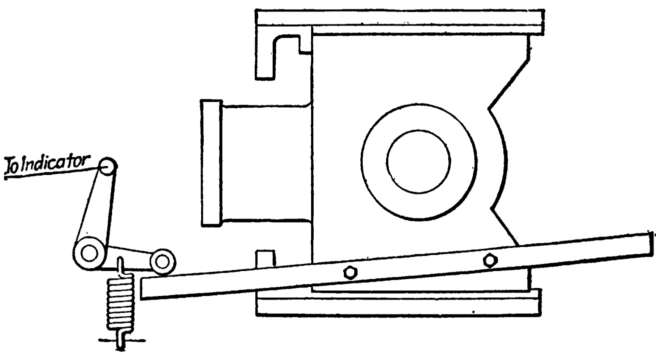


FIG. 266.—Inclined plane reducing motion.

and reducing motion. Running all the time, the device soon begins to wear and loses its accuracy; besides, the telescopic oiler is liable to get clogged and leaky, which may be the cause of a hot pin.

A permanent reducing motion that can be engaged or disengaged at will is shown in Fig. 266. It consists of an inclined plane in the shape of a steel bar fastened to the crosshead; a two-arm lever with a roller on the horizontal arm running on the bar transmits the motion to the indicator. The device can be thrown in and out of gear by securing the lever in such a position that the roller does not touch the bar.

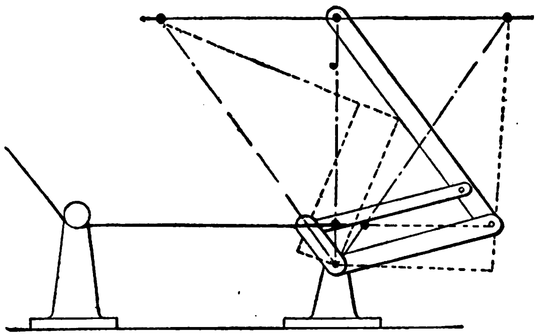


FIG. 267.—Pantograph reducing motion.

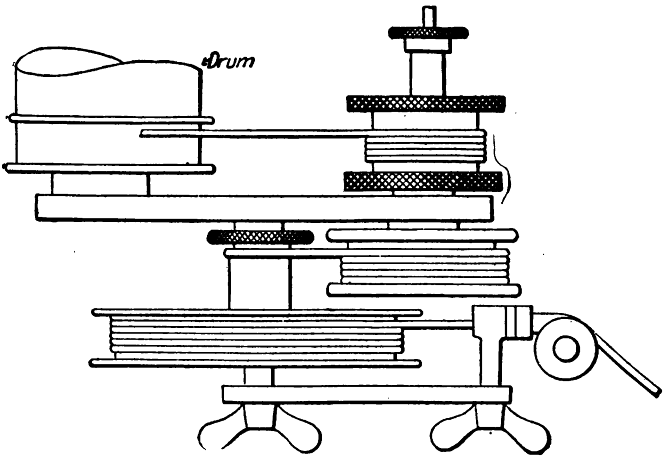


FIG. 268.—Reducing wheel.

Fig. 267 represents a pantograph in its simplest form, with the fulcrum pivoted on a stand fastened to the floor.

The cord is led over rollers to the indicator. The apparatus can be connected to the crosshead or disengaged only when the engine is stopped.

Reducing wheels attached to the indicator and driven by cords, as shown in Fig. 268, are largely used. There are three cords used—one from the crosshead to the large wheel, a second one from a small pulley to a spring case

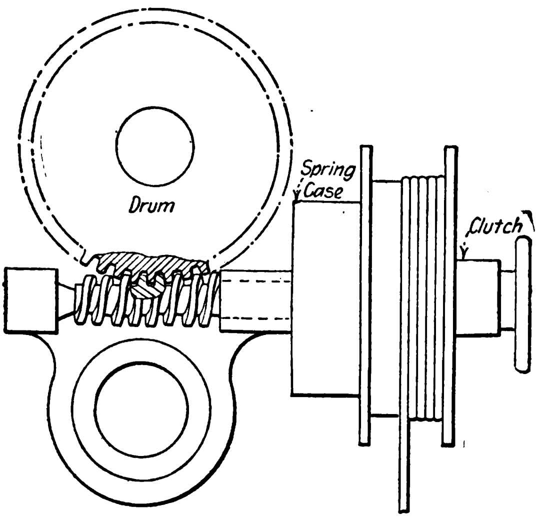


FIG. 269.—Worm wheel reducing motion.

and the third from another pulley to the indicator drum. On account of the number of cords the device may become troublesome; if the cords run unevenly or ride, the indicator cards will be inaccurate.

A more reliable and easily operated apparatus is shown in Fig. 269. Only one cord is used between the crosshead and the spring case. The latter is provided with a clutch that enables the operator to stop the drum of the indicator at any time for removing and renewing the card without disturbing the cord to the crosshead. The paper drum can also be stopped by turning a thumb-piece on top of the drum. The reduction in stroke in this reducing motion is made by means of a worm and wormwheel, the latter forming the base of the drum. There are only a few parts in the mechanism, which materially reduces the chance of anything wearing out or getting out of order.

A new engine should be frequently indicated and samples of the diagrams calculated, analyzed and placed in a record book for reference. The diagrams should be about 4 ins. long and not over 2 ins. high, as this is the limit of the pencil mechanism. In measuring the height of the diagram from the atmospheric line with the same scale as marked on the spring, the initial pressure in the cylinder can be found; comparing this with the boiler pressure will show the drop between boiler and engine. The distance between the exhaust line and the atmospheric line shows the back pressure in the cylinder on the return stroke of the piston. Of course both the steam gauge and the indicator spring may be incorrect. They may be compared as follows:

Place the indicator on a suitable pipe connection at the boiler, then raise steam and as it rises draw lines on a card by moving the drum by hand; when the gauge registers 10 lbs., 20 lbs., etc., up to the working pressure, mark the pressures on the card, as shown in Fig. 270, and compare them with the scale. If there is any marked difference between the two, a test gauge will have to be procured, attached to the boiler and the regular gauge checked with it for the different pressures, as before; comparing the readings on the gauges with the straight lines on the card and the scale will show what allowance should be made in determining the pressures on the diagrams taken from the engine.

The difference between boiler pressure and initial pressure in the cylinder should not exceed 5 lbs., neither should the back pressure be more than 1 lb. above atmospheric, unless the exhaust steam is used for heating. In condensing engines the difference between the vacuum in the condenser and in the exhaust at the engine should not

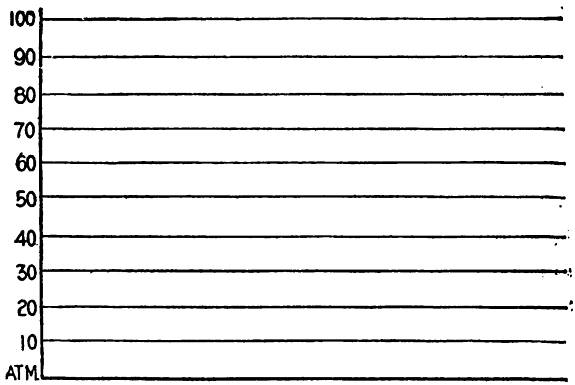


FIG. 270.—Test card for boiler pressures

exceed 2 ins. of mercury. Short and numerous pipe elbows or bends, long pipes or pipes of too small a diameter are often responsible for a reduction in pressure.

A loss in pressure may also occur in the steam chest or in the valves and ports. This can be ascertained by attaching an indicator to the steam chest, taking cards from it and from the cylinder and combining the two, as shown in Fig. 271, in which the drop in pressure is indicated by the difference in height at both ends of the diagram. On well-designed engines the drop should not exceed 2 lbs.

To make a comparison between the expansion curve of a diagram and the theoretical, or hyperbolic, curve, the clearance in the cylinder, ports and valves will have to be determined, either by figuring it from actual measurements or by measuring it with water. The latter method is the more correct one, provided there are no leaks in the piston or exhaust valves. The water may be poured in through the steam port with the steam valve removed

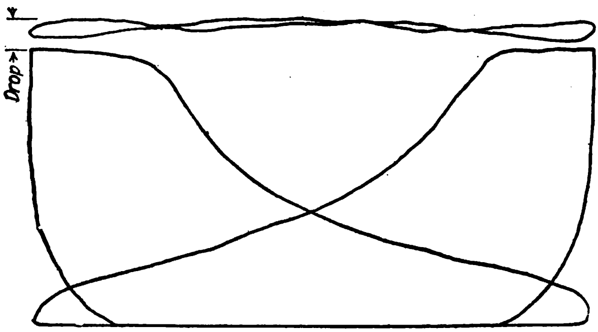


FIG. 271.—Combined cards of cylinder and steam chest.

until it stands level with the port. The piston should, of course, be at the end of the stroke and the corresponding exhaust valve closed. By using a graduated measure for filling the clearance space, the quantity of water in gallons or pints will be known; converting these into cubic inches and dividing by the piston displacement will give the percentage of clearance. With the clearance known, a line representing it and another line for the vacuum must be drawn on the diagram, as shown in Fig. 272, and taking the terminal pressure as the starting point, the isothermal expansion curve is plotted. Any considerable difference between the theoretical and the actual expansion curves of the diagram will indicate leaks in the piston or valves, which can be located by the use of the indicator cocks, as previously explained.

To figure the indicated horse-power of an engine, the mean effective pressure on the piston must be calculated either by means of a planimeter or by drawing a number of ordinates and determining the mean height of the

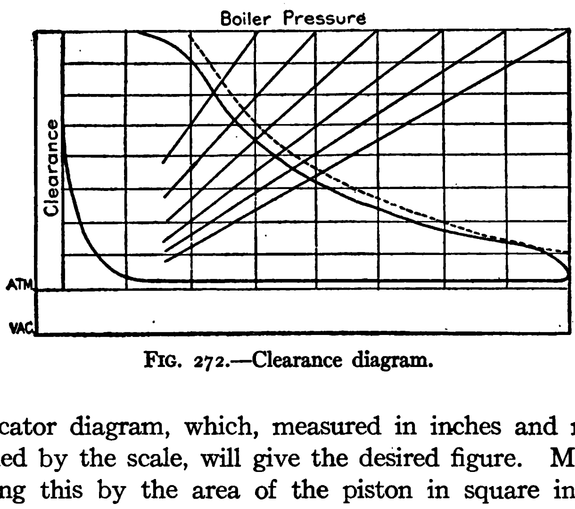


FIG. 272.—Clearance diagram.

indicator diagram, which, measured in inches and multiplied by the scale, will give the desired figure. Multiplying this by the area of the piston in square inches and the piston speed in feet per minute, divided by 33,000 gives the indicated horse-power developed when the diagram was taken.

To get a fair idea of the average load and the fluctuations of the governor, more than one revolution should be recorded on the diagrams by holding the pencil on the card during half a dozen strokes of the piston for each end of the cylinder. This will produce diagrams similar to the one shown in Fig. 273. By repeating the process at intervals of half an hour for a whole working day, a good idea of the load conditions can be obtained.

In factories where the power is transmitted to separate departments, floors or rooms, records may be made of the power required for each of them if the engine is indicated as follows: The first set of cards is taken with the full load on, the next set with one room or department thrown off, then with two off, three off, etc., the last set showing only the friction load. After computing

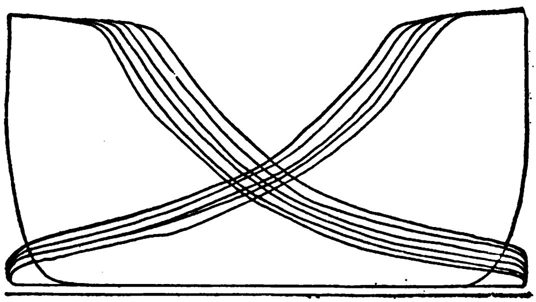


FIG. 273.—Several diagrams on one card.

the average load of each set of diagrams and subtracting them from each other in the same succession as taken, the load for each department can be found.

The speed fluctuation of an engine should be confined between certain limits. This is easily attained for steady loads, but for sudden and great variations of load, special features must be incorporated in the design. The first consideration in this respect is the flywheel, which must be heavy enough to give a uniform motion. It should compensate for the impulse of the steam on the piston during admission and the gradually decreasing pressure during expansion. It must also neutralize the varying effect of the crankpin effort, never the same at any two consecutive moments, and be able to overcome shocks due to instant changes in the load.

Governor Regulation

The governor can begin to act when a change in the velocity of the wheel has taken place, only after one-half of a revolution is completed, when it will admit more or less

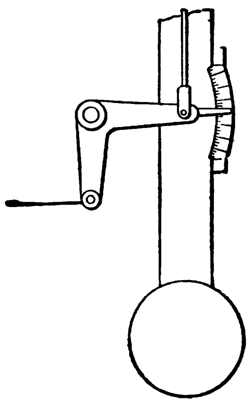


FIG. 274.—Speed indicator on governor column.

steam for the next turn, or stroke. Its object, therefore, is to regulate the amount of steam necessary to keep the shaft and wheel revolving at a certain speed. To what degree of uniformity a governor will regulate the speed of an engine depends on its sensitiveness. Most Corliss-engine governors are provided with a sleeve that moves up and down on a vertical spindle; different positions of the sleeve represent different speeds of the engine. For comparatively steady loads this motion may be utilized to indicate variations in speed, by placing a graduated scale on the governor column with a hand on the lever pointing to it, as shown in Fig. 274, and marking the scale for certain speeds by timing the engine with a watch; but for fluctuating loads and accurate observations a tachometer driven by a belt from the shaft should be used.

Revolution counters cannot be used to show fluctuations of speed; they will only record the number of revolutions that an engine makes during a certain length of time without regard to varying speeds. A recording and indicating tachometer will show the speed of an engine at any moment and also produce a written record on a chart, showing the time of starting and stopping and indicating the fluctuations during twenty-four hours.

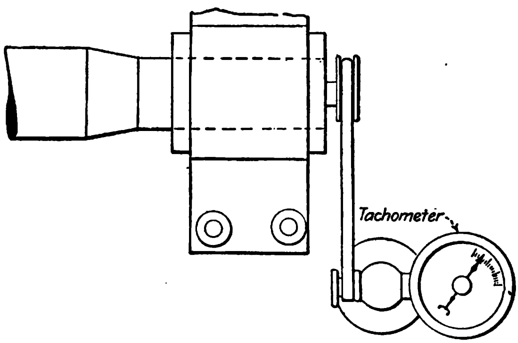


FIG. 275.—Tachometer driven from end of shaft.

On single-cylinder and tandem-compound engines the instrument can be conveniently driven from a pulley fastened to the end of the shaft, as shown in Fig. 275.

This enables the engineer to make a speed test by throwing on the tachometer belt, but on cross-compound engines it is troublesome to connect the driving belt when the engine is running. However, if the speed variation of an engine has once been noted and recorded for a certain length of time and different loads, that will serve as a guide unless some important changes in the valve gear and governor connections have been made since the speed was last tested.

On direct-connected engines fluctuations in speed will also produce a change in voltage. This, however, is not so reliable as a test with a tachometer, since the voltage may also be affected by varying loads of the generator. Recording ammeters and wattmeters afford a convenient and accurate way of keeping records of the load conditions in power plants using direct-connected units exclusively, but indicators and tachometers are of equal importance to keep a check on the performance of the engines. It apparently requires a lot of attention to regulate the performance of an engine, but if a system is once established with a regular routine, it will be found that the work is not only simple, but also interesting.

Examine New Engine

After a week's run a new engine should be thoroughly examined. The valves should be taken out and the high spots " touched up " with a fine file or scraper. The back head must be removed for an inspection of the cylinder bore; if there are signs of cutting, the affected part must be scraped smooth and the junk-ring and the packing ring taken out and carefully smoothed with a file. The crosshead and crankpin and their boxes should be inspected;

if there is any indication of wear or of binding, the boxes must be rescraped and relieved. The effective working surface of the boxes is only about 85 per cent of their projected area; the balance near the parting is of little use—in fact, it may be the cause of pinching and heating the pins. The boxes should, therefore, be relieved at these places, as shown in Fig. 276. This will also allow the lubricant to spread freely over the pins. Before unscrewing the wedge bolts, their position should be marked on the

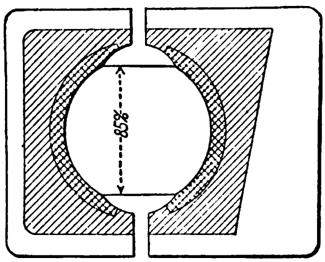


FIG. 276.—Crankpin boxes relieved to allow for wear.

connecting-rod to bring the wedges back to the same place. If a new adjustment is necessary, the wedges may be screwed tight and then backed off to give the boxes sufficient clearance. In most connecting-rods the taper of the wedges is $\frac{1}{8}$ in. per inch; if 1-in. bolts with eight threads per inch are used, one turn will adjust the boxes $\frac{1}{64}$ in. With proper marks on the heads of the bolts and on the rod, a close check can be kept on the adjustment.

Babbitting Boxes

The crankpin boxes must be lined with babbitt of the best quality. For this purpose the recess in the castings must be thoroughly cleaned, scraped and tinned. Before the babbitt is poured the boxes must be heated, and after cooling it should be expanded by hammering. Babbitt poured into boxes not previously tinned and heated is liable to shake loose and break into small pieces. Genuine babbitt is composed of 3 parts copper, 89 parts tin, and 8 parts antimony—an expensive mixture, but the extra expense will be saved over and over again through its excellent wearing qualities. Inferior grades of anti-friction metal are principally composed of lead; they wear rapidly, unless the pressure per unit of surface is low. On babbitted boxes no other part except the babbitt must come in contact with the bearing surface of the pin.

The shells and quarter-boxes of the main and outer bearings should be examined after the engine has been run several days, and if they show unequal wear they must be lightly rescraped. It is not only a needless waste of material to babbitt the caps of main and outer bearings the full length on horizontal engines, but also a detriment to efficient lubrication. There is no tendency for the shaft to lift, therefore, a narrow strip at each end will be sufficient to keep it in place. The wide space between the two strips and between cap and shaft makes it possible for the oil to spread over the whole surface and lessens the danger of dry places being formed. If the edges of the quarter-boxes and lower shells are well beveled, there is no need of oil grooves. Some engine builders state that the lower shell of the main bearing on their engines can be removed " by lifting the shaft a fractional part of an inch," which is a vague expression. If it means that the shaft has to be lifted $\frac{15}{16}$ in., for instance, that would be unsatisfactory, since it would, in many cases, involve quite an expenditure of time and money; $\frac{1}{8}$ in., or, on large engines, $\frac{1}{4}$ in. should be the highest lift required for this purpose. An engineer will do well to investigate this matter before an engine is accepted.

Engine Adjustment

Any part that has been adjusted must be watched closely for a while, and the engineer must be prepared for an emergency. One of the most disagreeable things that can happen is a hot pin or bearing. On a new engine this may come quickly and not much time can be lost in applying remedies. If the crankpin gets hot, it should be flooded with oil through the center-oiler; should the heating continue, the engine must be slowed down and the wedge backed off. The same thing should be done if the crosshead pin heats unduly. On main and outer bearings the capbolts should be loosened, the quarter-boxes backed off, and plenty of oil poured on the shaft.

Light oil has no lubricating effect on hot surfaces. It is, therefore, of little use on a hot bearing or pin except to carry off some of the heat if used in considerable quantities. To be beneficial it must be mixed with cylinder oil, but cylinder oil alone is to be preferred. Filtered water mixed with oil may be used for cooling, but never hydrant or well water that contains grit, which would embed itself in the surfaces and quickly ruin them.

Cooling Hot Boxes

It is dangerous to throw water over or " turn the hose on " the connecting-rod and boxes if the crosshead pin or crankpin gets hot; they will contract if suddenly cooled and close in on the pins pinching them that much tighter, which may result in a serious breakdown. The cooling process should be done from the inside to make the pins cool first. If the babbitt begins to run, the engine must be turned over slowly but not stopped suddenly, otherwise the babbitt will "freeze," making it difficult to remove the boxes or shells. The engine must be kept moving and the hot parts cooled until the babbitt is safe, when the engine may be shut down and examined. It depends, of course, on circumstances whether it may be started again without removing the parts affected, or whether they must be taken down and overhauled or even rebabbitted and refitted.

Compound engines are cared for much the same as simple engines. In a cross-compound, two engines are connected to one shaft, while in a tandem-compound both cylinders have a piston rod, crosshead, connecting-rod frame and crank in common. The object of compounding is to attain better economy by the use of higher steam pressures, a greater ratio of expansion and reduced cylinder condensation. The steam is expanded in two cylinders, which lessens the range of temperatures in each of them. Steam has the tendency to give up heat the moment it strikes a colder surface, which is the cause of much loss of steam in single-cylinder engines running with high steam pressure.

Assuming, for instance, an initial pressure of 150 lbs. gauge with a temperature of 366° F., if the engine exhausts against 1 lb. back pressure, the incoming steam will come in contact with surfaces which have been exposed to a temperature of 216° F., a difference of 150°, provided there is no compression. Now if the process is carried out in two cylinders, one high- and the other low-pressure, the temperature in the high-pressure cylinder will range between 366 and 285° with a difference of 81°, and in the low pressure between 276 and 216°, with a difference of 60°.

If a condenser is used, the single-cylinder engine will be at a greater disadvantage. Compression will reduce initial condensation, but it weakens the engine so that for the same load more steam has to be admitted. The question whether it is more advantageous to increase the compression and extend the cut-off, or to reduce the compression and lose steam through initial condensation, can, in many cases, be decided only by the coal pile. In a Corliss engine there will usually be quite enough compression from this point of view if sufficient is used to give the necessary cushioning effect.

Most Economical Results

An interesting problem for an engineer is to find out under what conditions an engine will give the most economical results. Proper records will enable him to notice when peak loads or light loads occur and during which periods the load is normal. If there is any regularity in the changes of the load it will be possible to make careful tests as to steam consumption and to regulate the boiler pressure to suit. A high boiler pressure is not always the most economical; in fact, on a light load it may be wasteful. Neither is it good practice, as some people think, to overload an engine. If an economy test is made on an engine it should concern only the engine itself and not the evaporation and leaks of the boilers or the condensation in the steam pipe, which can be taken into account only in a test of the whole power plant or of each individual part.

An engineer should be concerned not only in the smooth and perfect running of his engine, but also in the greatest possible saving of steam. If he has an indicator, he can determine the steam consumption by taking diagrams at certain intervals and figure the amount of steam accounted for by each card in the following manner: Divide the number 859,375 by the product of the volume of the steam at the terminal pressure and the mean effective pressure; the quotient will give the steam consumed per indicated horse-power per hour.

The actual performance of steam engines in everyday use has been found to be about as follows:

Automatic high-speed engine..	50–60	lbs. per I.H.P. hr.
Slide valve engine............	40–50	"
Corliss engine................	24–34	"

This is for simple non-condensing engines and boiler pressures from 80 to 100 lbs. per square inch.

For compound engines and boiler pressures from 120 to 150 pounds the steam consumption may be assumed to be about 50 per cent less.

INDEX

A

B

D

E

F

G

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

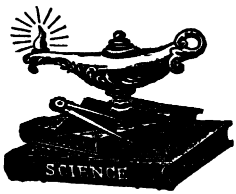
CATALOGUE

Of the LATEST and BEST

PRACTICAL and MECHANICAL

BOOKS

Including Automobile and Aviation Books



Any of these books will be sent prepaid to any part of the world, on receipt of price. Remit by Draft, Postal Order, Express Order or Registered Letter

Published and For Sale By

The Norman W. Henley Publishing Co.,

2 West 45th Street, New York, U.S.A.

INDEX

AUTOMOBILES AND MOTORCYCLES

The Modern Gasoline Automobile—Its Design, Construction, and Operation, 1918 Edition. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

This is the most complete, practical and up-to-date treatise on gasoline automobiles and their component parts ever published. In the new *revised* and *enlarged* 1918 *edition*, all phases of automobile construction, operation and maintenance are fully and completely described, and in language anyone can understand. Every part of all types of automobiles, from light cycle-cars to heavy motor trucks and tractors, are described in a thorough manner, not only the automobile, but every item of it; equipment, accessories, tools needed, supplies and spare parts necessary for its upkeep, are fully discussed.
It is clearly and concisely written by an expert familiar with every branch of the automobile industry and the originator of the practical system of self-education on technical subjects. It is a liberal education in the automobile art, useful to all who motor for either business or pleasure.
Anyone reading the incomparable treatise is in touch with all improvements that have been made in motor-car construction. All latest developments, such as high speed aluminum motors and multiple valve and sleeve-valve engines, are considered in detail. The latest ignition, carburetor and lubrication practice is outlined. New forms of change speed gears, and final power transmission systems, and all latest chassis improvements are shown and described. This book is used in all leading automobile schools and is conceded to be the STANDARD TREATISE. The chapter on Starting and Lighting Systems has been greatly enlarged, and many automobile engineering features that have long puzzled laymen are explained so clearly that the underlying principles can be understood by anyone. This book was first published six years ago and so much new matter has been added that it is nearly twice its original size. The only treatise covering various forms of war automobiles and recent developments in motor-truck design as well as pleasure cars. *This book is not too technical for the layman nor too elementary for the more expert. It is an incomparable work of reference for home or school.* 1,000 6x9 pages, nearly 1,000 illustrations, 12 folding plates. Cloth bound. Price **$3.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"It is the best book on the Automobile seen up to date."—J. H. Pile, Associate Editor *Automobile Trade Journal.*
"Every Automobile Owner has use for a book of this character."—*The Tradesman.*
"This book is superior to any treatise heretofore published on the subject."—*The Inventive Age*
"We know of no other volume that is so complete in all its departments, and in which the wide field of automobile construction with its mechanical intricacies is so plainly handled, both in the text and in the matter of illustrations."—*The Motorist.*
"The book is very thorough, a careful examination failing to disclose any point in connection with the automobile, its care and repair, to have been overlooked."—*Iron Age.*
"Mr. Pagé has done a great work, and benefit to the Automobile Field."—W. C. Hasford, Mgr. Y. M. C. A. Automobile School, Boston, Mass.
"It is just the kind of a book a motorist needs if he wants to understand his car."—*American Thresherman.*

The Model T Ford Car, Its Construction, Operation and Repair. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

This is a complete instruction book. All parts of the Ford Model T Car are described and illustrated; the construction is fully described and operating principles made clear to everyone. Every Ford owner needs this practical book. You don't have to guess about the construction or where the trouble is, as it shows how to take all parts apart and how to locate and fix all faults. The writer, Mr. Pagé, has operated a Ford car for many years and writes from actual knowledge. Among the contents are: 1. The Ford Car: Its Parts and Their Functions. 2. The Engine and Auxiliary Groups. How the Engine Works—The Fuel Supply System—The Carburetor—Making the Ignition Spark—Cooling and Lubrication. 3. Details of Chassis. Change Speed Gear—Power Transmission—Differential Gear Action—Steering Gear—Front Axle—Frame and Springs—Brakes. 4. How to Drive and Care for the Ford. The Control System Explained—Starting the Motor—Driving the Car—Locating Roadside Troubles—Tire Repairs—Oiling the Chassis—Winter Care of Car. 5. Systematic Location of Troubles and Remedies. Faults in Engine—Faults in Carburetor—Ignition Troubles—Cooling and Lubrication System Defects—Adjustment of Transmission Gear—General Chassis Repairs. 95 illustrations, 300 pages, 2 large folding plates. Price **$1.00**

Automobile Repairing Made Easy. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

A comprehensive, practical exposition of every phase of modern automobile repairing practice. Outlines every process incidental to motor car restoration. Gives plans for workshop construction, suggestions for equipment, power needed, machinery and tools necessary to carry on business successfully. Tells how to overhaul and repair all parts of all automobiles. Everything is explained so simpy that motorists and students can acquire a full working knowledge of automobile repairing. This work starts with the engine, then considers carburetion, ignition, cooling and lubrication systems. The clutch, change speed gearing and transmission system are considered in detail. Contains instructions for repairing all types of axles, steering gears and other chassis parts. Many tables, short cuts in figuring and rules of practice are given for the mechanic. Explains fully valve and magneto timing, "tuning" engines, systematic location of trouble, repair of ball and roller bearings, shop kinks, first aid to injured and a multitude of subjects of interest to all in the garage and repair business. *This book contains special instructions on electric starting, lighting and ignition systems, tire repairing and rebuilding, autogenous welding, brazing and soldering, heat treatment of steel, latest timing practice, eight and twelve-cylinder motors, etc.* 5¾x8. Cloth. 1,056 pages, 1,000 illustrations, 11 folding plates. Price **$3.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"'Automobile Repairing Made Easy' is the best book on the subject I have ever seen and the only book I ever saw that is of any value in a garage."—Fred Jeffrey, Martinsburg, Neb.
"I wish to thank you for sending me a copy of 'Automobile Repairing Made Easy.' I do not think it could be excelled."—S. W. Gisriel, Director of Instruction, Y. M. C. A., Philadelphia, Pa.

Questions and Answers Relating to Modern Automobile Construction, Driving and Repair. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

A practical self-instructor for students, mechanics and motorists, consisting of thirty-seven lessons in the form of questions and answers, written with special reference to the requirements of the non-technical reader desiring easily understood, explanatory matter relating to all branches of automobiling. The subject-matter is absolutely correct and explained in simple language. If you can't answer all of the following questions, you need this work. The answers to these and over 2,000 more are to be found in its pages. Give the name of all important parts of an automobile and describe their functions. Describe action of latest types of kerosene carburetors. What is the difference between a "double" ignition system and a "dual" ignition system? Name parts of an induction coil. How are valves timed? What is an electric motor starter and how does it work? What are advantages of worm drive gearing? Name all important types of ball and roller bearings. What is a "three-quarter" floating axle? What is a two-speed axle? What is the Vulcan electric gear shift? Name the causes of lost power in automobiles. Describe all noises due to deranged mechanism and give causes. How can you adjust a carburetor by the color of the exhaust gases? What causes "popping" in the carburetor? What tools and supplies are needed to equip a car? How do you drive various makes of cars? What is a differential lock and where is it used? Name different systems of wire wheel construction, etc., etc. A popular work at a popular price. 5¼x7½. Cloth. 650 pages, 350 illustrations, 3 folding plates. Price **$1.50**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"If you own a car—get this book."—*The Glassworker.*

"Mr. Page has the faculty of making difficult subjects plain and understandable."—*Bristol Press.*

"We can name no writer better qualified to prepare a book of instruction on automobiles than Mr. Victor W. Pagé."—*Scientific American.*

"The best automobile catechism that has appeared."—*Automobile Topics.*

"There are few men, even with long experience, who will not find this book useful. Great pains have been taken to make it accurate. Special recommendation must be given to the illustrations, which have been made specially for the work. Such excellent books as this greatly assist in fully understanding your automobile."—*Engineering News.*

Modern Starting, Lighting and Ignition Systems. By Victor W. Pagé, M.E.

This practical volume has been written with special reference to the requirements of the non-technical reader desiring easily understood, explanatory matter, relating to all types of automobile ignition, starting and lighting systems. It can be undeistood by anyone, even without electrical knowledge, because elementary electrical principles are considered before any attempt is made to discuss features of the various systems. These basic principles are clearly stated and illustrated with simple diagrams. *All the leading systems of starting, lighting and ignition have been described and illustrated with the co-operation of the experts employed by the manufacturers.* Wiring diagrams are shown in both technical and non-technical forms. All symbols are fully explained. It is a comprehensive review of modern starting and ignition system practice, and includes a complete exposition of storage battery construction, care and repair. All types of starting motors, generators, magnetos, and all ignition or lighting system-units are fully explained. *Every person in the automobile business needs this volume.* Among some of the subjects treated are: I.—Elementary Electricity; Current Production; Flow; Circuits; Measurements; Definitions; Magnetism; Battery Action; Generator Action. II.—Battery Ignition Systems. III.—Magneto Ignition Systems. IV.—Elementary Exposition of Starting System Principles. V.—Typical Starting and Lighting Systems; Practical Application; Wiring Diagrams; Auto-lite, Bijur, Delco, Dyneto-Entz, Gray and Davis, Remy, U. S. L., Westinghouse, Bosch-Rushmore, Genemotor, North-East, etc. VI.—Locating and Repairing Troubles in Starting and Lighting Systems. VII.—Auxiliary. Electric Systems; Gear-shifting by Electricity; Warning Signals; Electric Brake; Entz-Transmission, Wagner-Saxon Circuits, Wagner-Studebaker Circuits. 5¼x7½. Cloth. 530 pages, 297 illustrations, 3 folding plates. Price **$1.50**

Automobile Welding With the Oxy-Acetylene Flame. By M. Keith Dunham.

This is the only complete book on the "why" and "how" of Welding with the Oxy-Acetylene Flame, and from its pages one can gain information so that he can weld anything that comes along.

No one can afford to be without this concise book, as it first explains the apparatus to be used, and then covers in detail the actual welding of all automobile parts. The welding of aluminum, cast iron, steel, copper, brass and malleable iron is clearly explained, as well as the proper way to burn the carbon out of the combustion head of the motor. Among the contents are: Chapter I.—Apparatus Knowledge. Chapter II.—Shop Equipment and Initial Procedure. Chapter III.—Cast Iron. Chapter IV.—Aluminum. Chapter V.—Steel. Chapter VI.—Malleable Iron, Copper, Brass, Bronze. Chapter VII.—Carbon Burning and other Uses of Oxygen and Acetylene. Chapter VIII.—How to Figure Cost of Welding. 167 pages, fully illustrated. Price **$1.00**

Storage Batteries Simplified. By Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

A comprehensive treatise devoted entirely to secondary batteries and their maintenance, repair and use.

This is the most up-to-date book on this subject. Describes fully the Exide, Edison, Gould, Willard, U. S. L. and other storage battery forms in the types best suited for automobile, stationary and marine work. Nothing of importance has been omitted that the reader should know about the practical operation and care of storage batteries. No details have been slighted. The instructions for charging and care have been made as simple as possible. Brief Synopsis of Chapters: Chapter I.—Storage Battery Development; Types of Storage Batteries; Lead Plate Types; The Edison Cell. Chapter II.—Storage Battery Construction; Plates and Girds; Planté Plates; Fauré Plates; Non-Lead Plates; Commercial Battery Designs. Chapter III.—Charging Methods; Rectifiers; Converters; Rheostats; Rules for Charging. Chapter IV.—Battery Repairs and Maintenance. Chapter V.—Industrial Application of Storage Batteries; Glossary of Storage Battery Terms. 208 Pages. Very Fully Illustrated. Price . . . . **$1.50 net**

How to Run an Automobile. By Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

This treatise gives concise instructions for starting and running all makes of gasoline automobiles, how to care for them, and gives distinctive features of control. Describes every step for shifting gears, controlling engines, etc. Among the chapters contained are: I.—Automobile Parts and Their Functions. II.—General Starting and Driving Instructions. III.—Typical 1917 Control Systems. IV.—Care of Automobiles. 178 pages. 72 specially made illustrations. Price **$1.00**

The Automobilist's Pocket Companion and Expense Record. Arranged by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

This book is not only valuable as a convenient cost record but contains much information of value to motorists. Includes a condensed digest of auto laws of all States, a lubrication schedule, hints for care of storage battery and care of tires, location of road troubles, anti-freezing solutions, horse-power table, driving hints and many useful tables and recipes of interest to all motorists. Not a technical book in any sense of the word, just a collection of practical facts in simple language for the everyday motorist. Price **$1.00**

Motorcycles, Side Cars and Cyclecars; their Construction, Management and Repair. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

The only complete work published for the motorcyclist and cyclecarist. Describes fully all leading types of machines, their design, construction, maintenance, operation and repair. This treatise outlines fully the operation of two- and four-cycle power plants and all ignition, carburetion and lubrication systems in detail. Describes all representative types of free engine clutches, variable speed gears and power transmission systems. Gives complete instructions for operating and repairing all types. Considers fully electric self-starting and lighting systems, all types of spring frames and spring forks and shows leading control methods. For those desiring technical information a complete series of tables and many formulæ to assist in designing are included. The work tells how to figure power needed to climb grades, overcome air resistance and attain high speeds. It shows how to select gear ratios for various weights and powers, how to figure braking efficiency required, gives sizes of belts and chains to transmit power safely, and shows how to design sprockets, belt pulleys, etc. This work also includes complete formulæ for figuring horse-power, shows how dynamometer tests are made, defines relative efficiency of air and water-cooled engines, plain and anti-friction bearings and many other data of a practical, helpful, engineering nature. Remember that you get this information in addition to the practical description and instructions which alone are worth several times the price of the book. 550 pages. 350 specially made illustrations, 5 folding plates. Cloth. Price **$1.50**

AUTOMOBILE AND MOTORCYCLE CHARTS

Chart. Location of Gasoline Engine Troubles Made Easy—A Chart Showing Sectional View of Gasoline Engine. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

It shows clearly all parts of a typical four-cylinder gasoline engine of the four-cycle type. It outlines distinctly all parts liable to give trouble and also details the derangements apt to interfere with smooth engine operation.

Valuable to students, motorists, mechanics, repairmen, garagemen, automobile salesmen, chauffeurs, motorboat owners, motor-truck and tractor drivers, aviators, motor-cyclists, and all others who have to do with gasoline power plants.

It simplifies location of all engine troubles, and while it will prove invaluable to the novice, it can be used to advantage by the more expert. It should be on the walls of every public and private garage, automobile repair shop, club house or school. It can be carried in the automobile or pocket with ease, and will insure against loss of time when engine trouble manifests itself.

This sectional view of engine is a complete review of all motor troubles. It is prepared by a practical motorist for all who motor. More information for the money than ever before offered. No details omitted. Size 25x38 inches. Securely mailed on receipt of **25 cents**

Chart. Location of Carbureton Troubles Made Easy. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

This chart shows all parts of a typical pressure feed fuel supply system and gives causes of trouble, how to locate defects and means of remedying them. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Chart. Location of Ford Engine Troubles Made Easy. Compiled by Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

This shows clear sectional views depicting all portions of the Ford power plant and auxiliary groups. It outlines clearly all parts of the engine, fuel supply system, ignition group and cooling system, that are apt to give trouble, detailing all derangements that are liable to make an engine lose power, start hard or work irregularly. This chart is valuable to students, owners, and drivers, as it simplifies location of all engine faults. Of great advantage as an instructor for the novice, it can be used equally well by the more expert as a work of reference and review. It can be carried in the tool-box or pocket with ease and will save its cost in labor eliminated the first time engine trouble manifests itself. Prepared with special reference to the average man's needs and is a practical review of all motor troubles because it is based on the actual experience of an automobile engineer-mechanic with the mechanism the chart describes. It enables the non-technical owner or operator of a Ford car to locate engine derangements by systematic search, guided by easily recognized symptoms instead of by guesswork. It makes the average owner independent of the roadside repair shop when touring. Must be seen to be appreciated. Size 25x38 inches. Printed on heavy bond paper. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Chart. Lubrication of the Motor Car Chassis. Compiled by Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

This chart presents the plan view of a typical six-cylinder chassis of standard design and all parts are clearly indicated that demand oil, also the frequency with which they must be lubricated and the kind of oil to use. A practical chart for all interested in motor-car maintenance. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Chart. Location of Ignition System Troubles Made Easy. Compiled by Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

In this diagram all parts of a typical double ignition system using battery and magneto current are shown, and suggestions are given for readily finding ignition troubles and eliminating them when found. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Chart. Location of Cooling and Lubrication System Faults. Compiled by Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

This composite diagram shows a typical automobile power plant using pump circulated water-cooling system and the most popular lubrication method. Gives suggestions for curing all overheating and loss of power faults due to faulty action of the oiling or cooling group. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Chart. Motorcycle Troubles Made Easy. Compiled by Victor W. Pagé, M.S.A.E.

A chart showing sectional view of a single-cylinder gasoline engine. This chart simplifies location of all power-plant troubles. A single-cylinder motor is shown for simplicity. It outlines distinctly all parts liable to give trouble and also details the derangements apt to interfere with smooth engine operation. This chart will prove of value to all who have to do with the operation, repair or sale of motorcycles. No details omitted. Size 30x20 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

AVIATION

Aviation Engines, their Design, Construction, Operation and Repair. By Lieut. Victor W. Pagé, Aviation Section, S.C.U.S.R.

A practical work containing valuable instructions for aviation students, mechanicians, squadron engineering officers and all interested in the construction and upkeep of airplane power plants.

The rapidly increasing interest in the study of aviation, and especially of the highly developed internal combustion engines that make mechanical flight possible, has created a demand for a text-book suitable for schools and home study that will clearly and concisely explain th-

workings of the various aircraft engines of foreign and domestic manufacture.
This treatise, written by a recognized authority on all of the practical aspects of internal combustion engine construction, maintenance and repair fills the need as no other book does.
The matter is logically arranged; all descriptive matter is simply expressed and copiously illustrated so that anyone can understand airplane engine operation and repair even if without previous mechanical training. This work is invaluable for anyone desiring to become an aviator or aviation mechanician.
The latest rotary types, such as the Gnome, Monosoupape, and Le Rhone, are fully explained, as well as the recently developed Vee and radial types. The subjects of carburetion, ignition, cooling and lubrication also are covered in a thorough manner. The chapters on repair and maintenance are distinctive and found in no other book on this subject.
Invaluable to the student, mechanic and soldier wishing to enter the aviation service.
Not a technical book, but a practical, easily understood work of reference for all interested in aeronautical science. 576 octavo pages. 253 specially made engravings. Price . **$3.00 net**

GLOSSARY OF AVIATION TERMS

Termes D'Aviation, English-French, French-English. Compiled by Lieuts. Victor W. Pagé, A.S., S.C.U.S.R., and Paul Montariol of the French Flying Corps, on duty on Signal Corps Aviation School, Mineola, L. I.

A complete, well illustrated volume intended to facilitate conversation between English-speaking and French aviators. A very valuable book for all who are about to leave for duty overseas.
Approved for publication by Major W. G. Kilner, S.C., U.S.C.O. Signal Corps Aviation School. Hazlehurst Field, Mineola, L. I.
This book should be in every Aviator's and Mechanic's Kit for ready reference. 128 pages. Fully illustrated with detailed engravings. Price **$1.00**

Aviation Chart. Location of Airplane Power Plant Troubles Made Easy. By Lieut. Victor W. Pagé, A.S., S.C.U.S.R.

A large chart outlining all parts of a typical airplane power plant, showing the points where trouble is apt to occur and suggesting remedies for the common defects. Intended especially for Aviators and Aviation Mechanics on School and Field Duty. Price . . **50 cents**

BRAZING AND SOLDERING

Brazing and Soldering. By James F. Hobart.

The only book that shows you just how to handle any job of brazing or soldering that comes along; it tells you what mixture to use, how to make a furnace if you need one. Full of valuable kinks. The fifth edition of this book has just been published, and to it much new matter and a large number of tested formulæ for all kinds of solders and fluxes have been added. Illustrated. Price . . . . **25 cents**

CHARTS

Aviation Chart. Location of Airplane Power Plant Troubles Made Easy. By Lieut. Victor W. Pagé, A.S., S.C.U.S.R.

A large chart outlining all parts of a typical airplane power plant, showing the points where trouble is apt to occur and suggesting remedies for the common defects. Intended especially for Aviators and Aviation Mechanics on School and Field Duty. Price . . . . **50 cents**

Lubrication of the Motor Car Chassis.

This chart presents the plan view of a typical six-cylinder chassis of standard design and all parts are clearly indicated that demand oil, also the frequency with which they must be lubricated and the kind of oil to use. A practical chart for all interested in motor-car maintenance. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Gasoline Engine Troubles Made Easy—A Chart Showing Sectional View of Gasoline Engine. Compiled by Lieut. VICTOR W. PAGÉ, A.S., S.C.U.S.R.

It shows clearly all parts of a typical four-cylinder gasoline engine of the four-cycle type. It outlines distinctly all parts liable to give trouble and also details the derangements apt to interfere with smooth engine operation.
Valuable to students, motorists, mechanics, repairmen, garagemen, automobile salesmen, chauffeurs, motor-boat owners, motor-truck and tractor drivers, aviators, motor-cyclists, and all others who have to do with gasoline power plants.
It simplifies location of all engine troubles, and while it will prove invaluable to the novice, it can be used to advantage by the more expert. It should be on the walls of every public and private garage, automobile repair shop, club house or school. It can be carried in the automobile or pocket with ease and will insure against loss of time when engine trouble manifests itself.
This sectional view of engine is a complete review of all motor troubles. It is prepared by a practical motorist for all who motor. No details omitted. Size 25x38 inches. Price **25 cents**

Location of Carburetion Troubles Made Easy.

This chart shows all parts of a typical pressure feed fuel supply system and gives causes of trouble, how to locate defects and means of remedying them. Size 24x38 inches.
Price . . . . **25 cents**

Location of Ignition System Troubles Made Easy.

In this chart all parts of a typical double ignition system using battery and magneto current are shown and suggestions are given for readily finding ignition troubles and eliminating them when found. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Location of Cooling and Lubrication System Faults.

This composite chart shows a typical automobile power plant using pump circulated water-cooling system and the most popular lubrication method. Gives suggestions for curing all overheating and loss of power faults due to faulty action of the oiling or cooling group. Size 24x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Motorcycle Troubles Made Easy—A Chart Showing Sectional View of Single-Cylinder Gasoline Engine. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

This chart simplifies location of all power-plant troubles, and will prove invaluable to all who have to do with the operation, repair or sale of motorcycles. No details omitted. Size 25x38 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Location of Ford Engine Troubles Made Easy. Compiled by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.S.A.E.

This shows clear sectional views depicting all portions of the Ford power plant and auxiliary groups. It outlines clearly all parts of the engine, fuel supply system, ignition group and cooling system, that are apt to give trouble, detailing all derangements that are liable to make an engine lose power, start hard or work irregularly. This chart is valuable to students, owners, and drivers, as it simplifies location of all engine faults. Of great advantage as an instructor for the novice, it can be used equally well by the more expert as a work of reference and review. It can be carried in the toolbox or pocket with ease and will save its cost in labor eliminated the first time engine trouble manifests itself. Prepared with special reference to the average man's needs and is a practical review of all motor troubles because it is based on the actual experience of an automobile engineer-mechanic with the mechanism the chart describes. It enables the non-technical owner or operator of a Ford car to locate engine derangements by systematic search, guided by easily recognised symptoms instead of by guesswork. It makes the average owner independent of the roadside repair shop when touring. Must be seen to be appreciated. Size 25x38 inches. Printed on heavy bond paper.
Price . . . . **25 cents**

Modern Submarine Chart—with Two Hundred Parts Numbered and Named.

A cross-section view, showing clearly and distinctly all the interior of a Submarine of the latest type. You get more information from this chart, about the construction and operation of a Submarine, than in any other way. No details omitted—everything is accurate and to scale. It is absolutely correct in every detail, having been approved by Naval Engineers. All the machinery and devices fitted in a modern Submarine Boat are shown, and to make the engraving more readily understood all the features are shown in operative form, with Officers and Men in the act of performing the duties assigned to them in service conditions. This CHART IS REALLY AN ENCYCLOPEDIA OF A SUBMARINE. It is educational and worth many times its cost. Mailed in a Tube for . . . . . . **25 cents**

Box Car Chart.

A chart showing the anatomy of a box car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper name given in a reference list. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Gondola Car Chart.

A chart showing the anatomy of a gondola car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper reference name given in a reference list. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Passenger-Car Chart.

A chart showing the anatomy of a passenger-car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper name given in a reference list . . . . **25 cents**

Steel Hopper Bottom Coal Car.

A chart showing the anatomy of a steel Hopper Bottom Coal Car, having every part of the car numbered and its proper name given in a reference list. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Tractive Power Chart.

A chart whereby you can find the tractive power or drawbar pull of any locomotive without making a figure. Shows what cylinders are equal, how driving wheels and steam pressure affect the power. What sized engine you need to exert a given drawbar pull or anything you desire in this line. Price . . . . **50 cents**

Horse-Power Chart.

Shows the horse-power of any stationary engine without calculation. No matter what the cylinder diameter of stroke, the steam pressure of cut-off, the revolutions, or whether condensing or non-condensing, it's all there. Easy to use, accurate, and saves time and calculations. Especially useful to engineers and designers. Price . . . . **50 cents**

Boiler Room Chart. By Geo. L. Fowler.

A chart—size 14x28 inches—showing in isometric perspective the mechanisms belonging in a modern boiler room. The various parts are shown broken or removed, so that the internal construction is fully illustrated. Each part is given a reference number, and these, with the corresponding name, are given in a glossary printed at the sides. This chart is really a dictionary of the boiler room—the names of more than 200 parts being given. Price . **25 cents**

COKE

Modern Coking Practice, Including Analysis of Materials and Products. By J. E. Christopher and T. H. Byrom.

This, the standard work on the subject, has just been revised. It is a practical work for those engaged in Coke manufacture and the recovery of By-products. Fully illustrated with folding plates. It has been the aim of the authors, in preparing this book, to produce one which shall be of use and benefit to those who are associated with, or interested in, the modern developments of the industry. Among the Chapters contained in Volume I are: Introduction; Classification of Fuels; Impurities of Coals; Coal Washing; Sampling and Valuation of Coals, etc.; Power of Fuels; History of Coke Manufacture; Developments in the Coke Oven Design; Recent Types of Coke Ovens; Mechanical Appliances at Coke Ovens; Chemical and Physical Examination of Coke. Volume II covers fully the subject of By-Products. Price, per volume . . . . **$3.00 net**

COMPRESSED AIR

Compressed Air in All Its Applications. By Gardner D. Hiscox.

This is the most complete book on the subject of Air that has ever been issued, and its thirty-five chapters include about every phase of the subject one can think of. It may be called an encyclopedia of compressed air. It is written by an expert, who, in its 665 pages, has dealt with the subject in a comprehensive manner, no phase of it being omitted. Includes the physical properties of air from a vacuum to its highest pressure, its thermodynamics, compression, transmission and uses as a motive power, in the Operation of Stationary and Portable Machinery, in Mining, Air Tools, Air Lifts, Pumping of Water, Acids, and Oils; the Air Blast for Cleaning and Painting the Sand Blast and its Work, and the Numerous Appliances in which Compressed Air is a Most Convenient and Economical Transmitter of Power for Mechanical Work, Railway Propulsion, Refrigeration, and the Various Uses to which Compressed Air has been applied. Includes forty-four tables of the physical properties of air, its compression, expansion, and volumes required for various kinds of work, and a list of patents on compressed air from 1875 to date. Over 500 illustrations, 5th Edition, revised and enlarged.

Cloth bound. Price **$5.00**

Half Morocco. Price **$6.50**

CONCRETE

Concrete Workers' Reference Books. A Series of Popular Handbooks for Concrete Users. Prepared by A. A. Houghton.

The author, in preparing this Series, has not only treated on the usual types of construction, but explains and illustrates molds and systems that are not patented, but which are equal in value and often superior to those restricted by patents. These molds are very easily and cheaply constructed and embody simplicity, rapidity of operation, and the most successful results in the molded concrete. Each of these books is fully illustrated, and the subjects are exhaustively treated in plain English.

Concrete Wall Forms. By A. A. Houghton.

A new automatic wall clamp is illustrated with working drawings. Other types of wall forms, clamps, separators, etc., are also illustrated and explained. (No. 1 of Series) Price **50 cents**

Concrete Floors and Sidewalks. By A. A. Houghton.

The molds for molding squares, hexagonal and many other styles of mosaic floor and sidewalk blocks are fully illustrated and explained. (No. 2 of Series) Price . . . . . . **50 cents**

Practical Concrete Silo Construction. By A. A. Houghton.

Complete working drawings and specifications are given for several styles of concrete silos, with illustrations of molds for monolithic and block silos. The tables, data, and information presented in this book are of the utmost value in planning and constructing all forms of concrete silos. (No. 3 of Series) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Molding Concrete Chimneys, Slate and Roof Tiles. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The manufacture of all types of concrete slate and roof tile is fully treated. Valuable data on all forms of reinforced concrete roofs are contained within its pages. The construction of concrete chimneys by block and monolithic systems is fully illustrated and described. A number of ornamental designs of chimney construction with molds are shown in this valuable treatise. (No. 4 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Molding and Curing Ornamental Concrete. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The proper proportions of cement and aggregates for various finishes, also the method of thoroughly mixing and placing in the molds, are fully treated. An exhaustive treatise on this subject that every concrete worker will find of daily use and value. (No. 5 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Concrete Monuments, Mausoleums and Burial Vaults. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molding of concrete monuments to imitate the most expensive cut stone is explained in this treatise, with working drawings of easily built molds. Cutting inscriptions and designs are also fully treated. (No. 6 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Molding Concrete Bathtubs, Aquariums and Natatoriums. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

Simple molds and instruction are given for molding many styles of concrete bathtubs, swimming-pools, etc. These molds are easily built and permit rapid and successful work. (No. 7 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Concrete Bridges, Culverts and Sewers. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A number of ornamental concrete bridges with illustrations of molds are given. A collapsible center or core for bridges, culverts and sewers is fully illustrated with detailed instructions for building. (No. 8 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Constructing Concrete Porches. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A number of designs with working drawings of molds are fully explained so any one can easily construct different styles of ornamental concrete porches without the purchase of expensive molds. (No. 9 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Molding Concrete Flower-Pots, Boxes, Jardinieres, Etc. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molds for producing many original designs of flower-pots, urns, flower-boxes, jardinieres, etc., are fully illustrated and explained, so the worker can easily construct and operate same. (No. 10 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Molding Concrete Fountains and Lawn Ornaments. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

The molding of a number of designs of lawn seats, curbing, hitching posts, pergolas, sun dials and other forms of ornamental concrete for the ornamentation of lawns and gardens, is fully illustrated and described. (No. 11 of Series.) Price . . . . **50 cents**

Concrete from Sand Molds. By A. A. HOUGHTON.

A Practical Work treating on a process which has heretofore been held as a trade secret by the few who possessed it, and which will successfully mold every and any class of ornamental concrete work. The process of molding concrete with sand molds is of the utmost practical value, possessing the manifold advantages of a low cost of molds, the ease and rapidity of operation, perfect details to all ornamental designs, density and increased strength of the concrete, perfect curing of the work without attention and the easy removal of the molds regardless of any undercutting the design may have. 192 pages. Fully illustrated Price **$2.00**

Ornamental Concrete without Molds. By A. A. Houghton.

The process for making ornamental concrete without molds has long been held as a secret, and now, for the first time, this process is given to the public. The book reveals the secret and is the only book published which explains a simple, practical method whereby the concrete worker is enabled, by employing wood and metal templates of different designs, to mold or model in concrete any Cornice, Archivolt, Column, Pedestal, Base Cap, Urn or Pier in a monolithic form—right upon the job. These may be molded in units or blocks and then built up to suit the specifications demanded. This work is fully illustrated, with detailed engravings. Price **$2.00**

Concrete for the Farm and in the Shop. By H. Colin Campbell, C.E., E.M.

"Concrete for the Farm and in the Shop" is a new book from cover to cover, illustrating and describing in plain, simple language many of the numerous applications of concrete within the range of the home worker. Among the subjects treated are: Principles of Reinforcing; Methods of Protecting Concrete so as to Insure Proper Hardening; Home-made Mixers; Mixing by Hand and Machine; Form Construction, Described and Illustrated by Drawings and Photographs; Construction of Concrete Walls and Fences; Concrete Fence Posts; Concrete Gate Posts; Corner Posts; Clothes Line Posts; Grape Arbor Posts; Tanks; Troughs; Cisterns; Hog Wallows; Feeding Floors and Barnyard Pavements; Foundations; Well Curbs and Platforms; Indoor Floors; Sidewalks; Steps; Concrete Hotbeds and Cold Frames; Concrete Slab Roofs; Walls for Buildings; Repairing Leaks in Tanks and Cisterns; and all topics associated with these subjects as bearing upon securing the best results from concrete are dwelt upon at sufficient length in plain every-day English so that the inexperienced person desiring to undertake a piece of concrete construction can, by following the directions set forth in this book, secure 100 per cent. success every time. A number of convenient and practical tables for estimating quantities, and some practical examples, are also given. (5x7.) 149 pages. 51 illustrations. Price . . . . **75 cents**

Popular Handbook for Cement and Concrete Users. By Myron H. Lewis.

This is a concise treatise of the principles and methods employed in the manufacture and use of cement in all classes of modern works. The author has brought together in this work all the salient matter of interest to the user of concrete and its many diversified products. The matter is presented in logical and systematic order, clearly written, fully illustrated and free from involved mathematics. Everything of value to the concrete user is given, including kinds of cement employed in construction, concrete architecture, inspection and testing, waterproofing, coloring and painting, rules, tables, working and cost data. The book comprises thirty-three chapters, as follow: Introductory. Kinds of Cement and How They are Made. Properties. Testing and Requirements of Hydraulic Cement. Concrete and Its Properties. Sand, Broken Stone and Gravel for Concrete. How to Proportion the Materials. How to Mix and Place Concrete. Forms of Concrete Construction. The Architectural and Artistic Possibilities of Concrete. Concrete Residences. Mortars, Plasters and Stucco, and How to Use Them. The Artistic Treatment of Concrete Surfaces. Concrete Building Blocks. The Making of Ornamental Concrete. Concrete Pipes, Fences, Posts, etc. Essential Features and Advantages of Reenforced Concrete. How to Design Reenforced Concrete Beams, Slabs and Columns. Explanations of the Methods and Principles in Designing Reenforced Concrete, Beams and Slabs. Systems of Reenforcement Employed. Reenforced Concrete in Factory and General Building Construction. Concrete in Foundation Work. Concrete Retaining Walls, Abutments and Bulkheads. Concrete Arches and Arch Bridges. Concrete Beam and Girder Bridges. Concrete in Sewerage and Draining Works. Concrete Tanks, Dams and Reservoirs. Concrete Sidewalks, Curbs and Pavements. Concrete in Railroad Construction. The Utility of Concrete on the Farm. The Waterproofing of Concrete Structures. Grout of Liquid Concrete and Its Use. Inspection of Concrete Work. Cost of Concrete Work. Some of the special features of the book are: 1.—The Attention Paid to the Artistic and Architectural Side of Concrete Work. 2.—The Authoritative Treatment of the Problem of Waterproofing Concrete. 3.—An Excellent Summary of the Rules to be Followed in Concrete Construction. 4.—The Valuable Cost Data and Useful Tables given. A valuable Addition to the Library of Every Cement and Concrete User. Price . . **$2.50**

Waterproofing Concrete. By Myron H. Lewis.

Modern Methods of Waterproofing Concrete and Other Structures. A condensed statement of the Principles, Rules, and Precautions to be Observed in Waterproofing and Dampproofing Structures and Structural Materials. Paper binding. Illustrated. Price . . . . **50 cents**

DICTIONARIES

Aviation Terms, Termes D'Aviation, English-French, French-English. Compiled by Lieuts. VICTOR W. PAGÉ, A.S., S.C.U.S.R., and PAUL MONTARIOL, of the French Flying Corps, on duty on Signal Corps Aviation School, Mineola, L. I.

The lists contained are confined to essentials, and special folding plates are included to show all important airplane parts. The lists are divided in four sections as follows: 1.—Flying Field Terms. 2.—The Airplane. 3.—The Engine. 4.—Tools and Shop Terms.
A complete, well illustrated volume intended to facilitate conversation between English-speaking and French aviators. A very valuable book for all who are about to leave for duty overseas.
Approved for publication by Major W. G. Kilner, S.C., U.S.C.O. Signal Corps Aviation School, Hazelhurst Field, Mineola, L. I. This book should be in every Aviator's and Mechanic's Kit for ready reference. 128 pages, fully illustrated, with detailed engravings. Price . . **$1.00**

Standard Electrical Dictionary. By T. O'CONOR SLOANE.

An indispensable work to all interested in electrical science. Suitable alike for the student and professional. A practical handbook of reference containing definitions of about 5,000 distinct words, terms and phrases. The definitions are terse and concise and include every term used in electrical science. Recently issued. An entirely new edition. Should be in the possession of all who desire to keep abreast with the progress of this branch of science. Complete, concise and convenient. 682 pages, 393 illustrations. Price **$3.00**

DIES—METAL WORK

Dies: Their Construction and Use for the Modern Working of Sheet Metals. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

A most useful book, and one which should be in the hands of all engaged in the press working of metals; treating on the Designing, Constructing, and Use of Tools, Fixtures and Devices, together with the manner in which they should be used in the Power Press, for the cheap and rapid production of the great variety of sheet-metal articles now in use. It is designed as a guide to the production of sheet-metal parts at the minimum of cost with the maximum of output. The hardening and tempering of Press tools and the classes of work which may be produced to the best advantage by the use of dies in the power press are fully treated. Its 515 illustrations show dies, press fixtures and sheet-metal working devices, the descriptions of which are so clear and practical that all metal-working mechanics will be able to understand how to design, construct and use them. Many of the dies and press fixtures treated were either constructed by the author or under his supervision. Others were built by skilful mechanics and are in use in large sheet-metal establishments and machine shops. 6th Revised and Enlarged Edition. Price **$3.00**

Punches, Dies and Tools for Manufacturing in Presses. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

This work is a companion volume to the author's elementary work entitled "Dies: Their Construction and Use." It does not go into the details of die-making to the extent of the author's previous book, but gives a comprehensive review of the field of operations carried on by presses. A large part of the information given has been drawn from the author's personal experience. It might well be termed an Encyclopedia of Die-Making, Punch-Making, Die-Sinking, Sheet-Metal Working, and Making of Special Tools, Sub-presses, Devices and Mechanical Combinations for Punching, Cutting, Bending, Forming, Piercing, Drawing, Compressing and Assembling Sheet-Metal Parts, and also Articles of other Materials in Machine Tools. 2d Edition. Price **$4.00**

Drop Forging, Die-Sinking and Machine-Forming of Steel. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

This is a practical treatise on Modern Shop Practice, Processes, Methods, Machine Tools, and Details treating on the Hot and Cold Machine-Forming of Steel and Iron into Finished Shapes; together with Tools, Dies, and Machinery involved in the manufacture of Duplicate Forgings and Interchangeable Hot and Cold Pressed Parts from Bar and Sheet Metal. This book fills a demand of long standing for information regarding drop-forgings, die-sinking and machine-forming of steel and the shop practice involved, as it actually exists in the modern drop-forging shop. The processes of die-sinking and force-making, which are thoroughly described and illustrated in this admirable work, are rarely to be found explained in such a clear and concise manner as is here set forth. The process of die-sinking relates to the engraving or sinking of the female or lower dies, such as are used for drop-forgings, hot and cold machine-forging, swedging, and the press working of metals. The process of force-making relates to the engraving or raising of the male or upper dies used in producing the lower dies for the press-forming and machine-forging of duplicate parts of metal.
In addition to the arts above mentioned the book contains explicit information regarding the drop-forging and hardening plants, designs, conditions, equipment, drop hammers, forging machines, etc., machine forging, hydraulic forging, autogenous welding and shop practice. The book contains eleven chapters, and the information contained in these chapters is just what will prove most valuable to the forged-metal worker. All operations described in the work are thoroughly illustrated by means of perspective half-tones and outline sketches of the machinery employed. 300 detailed illustrations. Price **$2.50**

DRAWING—SKETCHING PAPER

Practical Perspective. By RICHARDS and COLVIN.

Shows just how to make all kinds of mechanical drawings in the only practical perspective isometric. Makes everything plain, so that any mechanic can understand a sketch or drawing in this way. Saves time in the drawing room, and mistakes in the shops. Contains practical examples of various classes of work. 4th Edition. Price . . . . **50 cents**

Linear Perspective Self-Taught. By HERMAN T. C. KRAUS.

This work gives the theory and practice of linear perspective, as used in architectural, engineering and mechanical drawings. Persons taking up the study of the subject by themselves will be able, by the use of the instruction given, to readily grasp the subject, and by reasonable practice become good perspective draftsmen. The arrangement of the book is good; the plate is on the left-hand, while the descriptive text follows on the opposite page, so as to be readily referred to. The drawings are on sufficiently large scale to show the work clearly and are plainly figured. There is included a self-explanatory chart which gives all information necessary for the thorough understanding of perspective. This chart alone is worth many times over the price of the book. 2d Revised and Enlarged Edition. Price **$2.50**

Self-Taught Mechanical Drawing and Elementary Machine Design. By F. L. SYLVESTER, M.E., Draftsman, with additions by ERIK OBERG, associate editor of "Machinery."

This is a practical treatise on Mechanical Drawing and Machine Design, comprising the first principles of geometric and mechanical drawing, workshop mathematics, mechanics, strength of materials and the calculations and design of machine details. The author's aim has been to adapt this treatise to the requirements of the practical mechanic and young draftsman and to present the matter in as clear and concise a manner as possible. To meet the demands of this class of students, practically all the important elements of machine design have been dealt with, and in addition algebraic formulas have been explained, and the elements of trigonometry treated in the manner best suited to the needs of the practical man. The book is divided into 20 chapters, and in arranging the material, mechanical drawing, pure and simple, has been taken up first, as a thorough understanding of the principles of representing objects facilitates the further study of mechanical subjects. This is followed by the mathematics necessary for the solution of the problems in machine design which are presented later, and a practical introduction to theoretical mechanics and the strength of materials. The various elements entering into machine design, such as cams, gears, sprocket-wheels, cone pulleys, bolts, screws, couplings, clutches, shafting and fly-wheels, have been treated in such a way as to make possible the use of the work as a text-book for a continuous course of study. It is easily comprehended and assimilated even by students of limited previous training. 330 pages, 215 engravings. Price **$2.00**

A New Sketching Paper.

A new specially ruled paper to enable you to make sketches or drawings in isometric perspective without any figuring or fussing. It is being used for shop details as well as for assembly drawings, as it makes one sketch do the work of three, and no workman can help seeing just what is wanted.

Pads of 40 sheets, 6x9 inches. Price . . . . **25 cents**
Pads of 40 sheets, 9x12 inches. Price . . . . **50 cents**
40 sheets, 12x18 inches. Price **$1.00**

ELECTRICITY

Arithmetic of Electricity. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

A practical treatise on electrical calculations of all kinds reduced to a series of rules, all of the simplest forms, and involving only ordinary arithmetic; each rule illustrated by one or more practical problems, with detailed solution of each one. This book is classed among the most useful works published on the science of electricity, covering as it does the mathematics of electricity in a manner that will attract the attention of those who are not familiar with algebraical formulas. 20th Edition. 160 pages. Price **$1.00**

Commutator Construction. By Wm. Baxter, Jr.

The business end of any dynamo or motor of the direct current type is the commutator. This book goes into the designing, building, and maintenance of commutators, shows how to locate troubles and how to remedy them; everyone who fusses with dynamos needs this. 4th Edition. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Dynamo Building for Amateurs, or How to Construct a Fifty-Watt Dynamo.
By Arthur J. Weed, Member of N. Y. Electrical Society.

A practical treatise showing in detail the construction of a small dynamo or motor, the entire machine work of which can be done on a small foot lathe. Dimensioned working drawings are given for each piece of machine work, and each operation is clearly described. This machine, when used as a dynamo, has an output of fifty watts; when used as a motor it will drive a small drill press or lathe. It can be used to drive a sewing machine on any and all ordinary work. The book is illustrated with more than sixty original engravings, showing the actual construction of the different parts. Among the contents are chapters on: 1. Fifty-Watt Dynamo. 2. Side Bearing Rods. 3. Field Punching. 4. Bearings. 5. Commutator. 6. Pulley. 7. Brush Holders. 8. Connection Board. 9. Armature Shaft. 10. Armature. 11. Armature Winding. 12. Field Winding. 13. Connecting and starting.

Paper. Price . . . . **50 cents**
Cloth. Price **$1.00**

Electric Bells. By M. B. Sleeper.

A complete treatise for the practical worker in Installing, Operating and Testing Bell Circuits, Burglar Alarms, Thermostats, and other apparatus used with Electric Bells.
Both the electrician and the experimenter will find in this book new material which is essential in their work. Tools, bells, batteries, unusual circuits, burglar alarms, annunciator systems, thermostats, circuit breakers, time alarms, and other apparatus used in bell circuits are described from the standpoints of their application, construction and repair. The detailed instruction for building the apparatus will appeal to the experimenter particularly.
The practical worker will find the chapter on Wiring, Calculation of Wire Sizes and Magnet Winding, Upkeep of Systems, and the Location of Faults, of the greatest value in their work. Among the chapters are: Tools and Materials for Bell Work; How and Why Bell Work; Batteries for Small Installations; Making Bells and Push Buttons; Wiring Bell Systems; Construction of Annunciators and Signals; Burglary Alarms and Auxiliary Apparatus; More Elaborate Bell Systems; Finding Faults and Remedying Them. 124 pages, fully illustrated.
Price . . . . **50 cents**

Electric Lighting and Heating Pocket Book. By Sydney F. Walker.

This book puts in convenient form useful information regarding the apparatus which is likely to be attached to the mains of an electrical company. Tables of units and equivalents are included and useful electrical laws and formulas are stated. 438 pages, 300 engravings. Bound in leather. Pocket book form. Price **$3.00**

Electric Wiring, Diagrams and Switchboards. By Newton Harrison, with additions by Thomas Poppe.

A thoroughly practical treatise covering the subject of Electric Wiring in all its branches, including explanations and diagrams which are thoroughly explicit and greatly simplify the subject. Practical, every-day problems in wiring are presented and the method of obtaining intelligent results clearly shown. Only arithmetic is used. Ohm's law is given a simple explanation with reference to wiring for direct and alternating currents. The fundamental principle of drop of potential in circuits is shown with its various applications. The simple circuit is developed with the position of mains, feeders and branches; their treatment as a part of a wiring plan and their employment in house wiring clearly illustrated. Some simple facts about testing are included in connection with the wiring. Molding and conduit work are given careful consideration; and switchboards are systematically treated, built up and illustrated, showing the purpose they serve, for connection with the circuits, and to shunt and compound wound machines. The simple principles of switchboard construction, the development of the switchboard, the connections of the various instruments, including the lightning arrester, are also plainly set forth.
Alternating current wiring is treated, with explanations of the power factor, conditions calling for various sizes of wire, and a simple way of obtaining the sizes for single-phase, two-phase and three-phase circuits. This is the only complete work issued showing and telling you what you should know about direct and alternating current wiring. It is a ready reference. The work is free from advanced technicalities and mathematics, arithmetic being used throughout. It is in every respect a handy, well-written, instructive, comprehensive volume on wiring for the wireman, foreman, contractor, or electrician. 2nd Revised Edition. 303 pages, 130 illustrations. Price **$1.50**

Electric Furnaces and their Industrial Applications. By J. Wright.

This is a book which will prove of interest to many classes of people; the manufacturer who desires to know what product can be manufactured successfully in the electric furnace, the chemist who wishes to post himself on the electro-chemistry, and the student of science who merely looks into the subject from curiosity. New, Revised and Enlarged Edition. 320 pages. Fully illustrated, cloth. Price **$3.00**

Electric Toy Making, Dynamo Building, and Electric Motor Construction. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

This work treats of the making at home of electrical toys, electrical apparatus, motors, dynamos, and instruments in general, and is designed to bring within the reach of young and old the manufacture of genuine and useful electrical appliances. The work is especially designed for amateurs and young folks.
Thousands of our young people are daily experimenting, and busily engaged in making electrical toys and apparatus of various kinds. The present work is just what is wanted to give the much needed information in a plain, practical manner, with illustrations to make easy the carrying out of the work. 20th Edition. Price **$1.00**

Electricity Simplified. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

The object of "Electricity Simplified" is to make the subject as plain as possible and to show what the modern conception of electricity is; to show how two plates of different metal, immersed in acid, can send a message around the globe; to explain how a bundle of copper wire rotated by a steam engine can be the agent in lighting our streets, to tell what the volt, ohm and ampere are, and what high and low tension mean; and to answer the questions that perpetually arise in the mind in this age of electricity. 13th Edition. 172 pages. Illustrated. Price **$1.00**

House Wiring. By Thomas W. Poppe.

This work describes and illustrates the actual installation of Electric Light Wiring, the manner in which the work should be done, and the method of doing it. The book can be conveniently carried in the pocket. It is intended for the Electrician, Helper and Apprentice. It solves all Wiring Problems and contains nothing that conflicts with the rulings of the National Board of Fire Underwriters. It gives just the information essential to the Successful Wiring of a Building. Among the subjects treated are: Locating the Meter. Panel-Boards. Switches. Plug Receptacles. Brackets. Ceiling Fixtures. The Meter Connections. The Feed Wires. The Steel Armored Cable System. The Flexible Steel Conduit System. The Ridig Conduit System. A digest of the National Board of Fire Underwriters' rules relating to metallic wiring systems. Various switching arrangements explained and diagrammed. The easiest method of testing the Three- and Four-way circuits explained. The grounding of all metallic wiring systems and the reason for doing so shown and explained. The insulation of the metal parts of lamp fixtures and the reason for the same described and illustrated. 125 pages. 2nd Edition, revised and enlarged. Fully illustrated. Flexible cloth. Price . . . . **50 cents**

How to Become a Successful Electrician. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

Every young man who wishes to become a successful electrician should read this book. It tells in simple language the surest and easiest way to become a successful electrician. The studies to be followed, methods of work, field of operation and the requirements of the successful electrician are pointed out and fully explained. Every young engineer will find this an excellent stepping stone to more advanced works on electricity which he must master before success can be attained. Many young men become discouraged at the very outstart by attempting to read and study books that are far beyond their comprehension. This book serves as the connecting link between the rudiments taught in the public schools and the real study of electricity. It is interesting from cover to cover. 18th Revised Edition, just issued. 205 pages. Illustrated. Price **$1.00**

Management of Dynamos. By Lummis-Paterson.

A handbook of theory and practice. This work is arranged in three parts. The first part covers the elementarv theory of the dynamo. The second part, the construction and action of the different classes of dynamos in common use are described; while the third part relates to such matters as affect the practical management and working of dynamos and motors. 4th Edition. 292 pages, 117 illustrations. Price **$1.50**

Practical Electricity. By Prof. T. O'Conor Sloane.

This work of 768 pages was previously known as Sloane's Electricians' Hand Book, and is intended for the practical electrican who has to make things go. The entire field of electricity is covered within its pages. Among some of the subjects treated are: The Theory of the Electric Current and Circuit, Electro-Chemistry, Primary Batteries, Storage Batteries, Generation and Utilization of Electric Powers, Alternating Current, Armature Winding, Dynamos and Motors, Motor Generators, Operation of the Central Station Switchboards, Safety Appliances, Distribution of Electric Light and Power, Street Mains, Transformers, Arc and Incandescent Lighting, Electric Measurements, Photometry, Electric Railways, Telephony, Bell-Wiring, Electric-Plating, Electric Heating, Wireless Telegraphy, etc. It contains no useless theory; everything is to the point. It teaches you just what you want to know about electricity. It is the standard work published on the subject. Forty-one chapters, 556 engravings. Price **$2.50**

Switchboards. By William Baxter, Jr.

This book appeals to every engineer and electrician who wants to know the practical side of things. It takes up all sorts and conditions of dynamos, connections and circuits, and shows by diagram and illustration just how the switchboard should be connected. Includes direct and alternating current boards, also those for arc lighting, incandescent and power circuits. Special treatment on high voltage boards for power transmission. 2nd Edition. 190 pages, Illustrated. Price **$1.50**

Standard Electrical Dictionary. By T. O'Conor Sloane.

An indispensable work to all interested in electrical science. Suitable alike for the student and professional. A practical handbook of reference containing definitions of about 5,000 distinct words, terms and phrases. The definitions are terse and concise and include every term used in electrical science. Recently issued. An entirely new edition. Should be in the possession of all who desire to keep abreast with the progress of this branch of science. In its arrangement and typography the book is very convenient. The word or term defined is printed in black-faced type, which readily catches the eye, while the body of the page is in smaller but distinct type. The definitions are well worded, and so as to be understood by the non-technical reader. The general plan seems to be to give an exact, concise definition, and then amplify and explain in a more popular way. Synonyms are also given, and references to other words and phrases are made. A very complete and accurate index of fifty pages is at the end of the volume; and as this index contains all synonyms, and as all phrases are indexed in every reasonable combination of words, reference to the proper place in the body of the book is readily made. It is difficult to decide how far a book of this character is to keep the dictionary form, and to what extent it may assume the encyclopedia form. For some purposes, concise, exactly worded definitions are needed; for other purposes, more extended descriptions are required. This book seeks to satisfy both demands, and does it with considerable success. 682 pages, 393 illustrations. 12th Edition.
Price **$3.00**

Storage Batteries Simplified. By Victor W. Pagé, M.E.

A complete treatise on storage battery operating principles, repairs and applications. The greatly increasing application of storage batteries in modern engineering and mechanical work has created a demand for a book that will consider this subject completely and exclusively. This is the most thorough and authoritative treatise ever published on this subject. It is written in easily understandable, non-technical language so that any one may grasp the basic principles of storage battery action as well as their practical industrial applications. All electric and gasoline automobiles use storage batteries. Every automobile repairman, dealer or salesman should have a good knowledge of maintenance and repair of these important elements of the motor car mechanism. This book not only tells how to charge, care for and rebuild storage batteries but also outlines all the industrial uses. Learn how they run street cars, locomotives and factory trucks. Get an understanding of the important functions they perform in submarine boats, isolated lighting plants, railway switch and signal systems, marine applications, etc. This book tells how they are used in central station standby service, for starting automobile motors and in ignition systems. Every practical use of the modern storage battery is outlined in this treatise. 320 pages, fully illustrated. Price . . . **$1.50**

Telephone Construction, Installation, Wiring, Operation and Maintenance. By W. H. Radcliffe and H. C. Cushing.

This book is intended for the amateur, the wireman, or the engineer who desires to establish a means of telephonic communication between the rooms of his home, office, or shop. It deals only with such things as may be of use to him rather than with theories.
Gives the principles of construction and operation of both the Bell and Independent instruments; approved methods of installing and wiring them; the means of protecting them from lightning and abnormal currents; their connection together for operation as series or bridging stations; and rules for their inspection and maintenance. Line wiring and the wiring and operation of special telephone systems are also treated. Intricate mathematics are avoided, and all apparatus, circuits and systems are thoroughly described. The appendix contains definitions of units and terms used in the text. Selected wiring tables, which are very helpful, are also included. Among the subjects treated are Construction, Operation, and Installation of Telephone Instruments; Inspection and Maintenance of Telephone Instruments; Telephone Line Wiring; Testing Telephone Line Wires and Cables; Wiring and Operation of Special Telephone Systems, etc. 2nd Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 223 pages, 154 illustrations **$1.00**

Wiring a House. By Herbert Pratt.

Shows a house already built; tells just how to start about wiring it; where to begin; what wire to use; how to run it according to Insurance Rules; in fact, just the information you need. Directions apply equally to a shop. 4th Edition. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony Simply Explained. By ALFRED P. MORGAN.

This is undoubtedly one of the most complete and comprehensible treatises on the subject ever published, and a close study of its pages will enable one to master all the details of the wireless transmission of messages. The author has filled a long-felt want and has succeeded in furnishing a lucid, comprehensible explanation in simple language of the theory and practice of wireless telegraphy and telephony.

Among the contents are: Introductory; Wireless Transmission and Reception—The Aerial System, Earth Connections—The Transmitting Apparatus, Spark Coils and Transformers, Condensers, Helixes, Spark Gaps, Anchor Gaps, Aerial Switches—The Receiving Apparatus, Detectors, etc.—Tuning and Coupling, Tuning Coils, Loose Couplers, Variable Condensers, Directive Wave Systems—Miscellaneous Apparatus, Telephone Receivers, Range of Stations Static Interference—Wireless Telephones, Sound and Sound Waves, The Vocal Cords and Ear—Wireless Telephone, How Sounds Are Changed into Electric Waves—Wireless Telephones, The Apparatus—Summary. 154 pages, 156 engravings. Price **$1.00**

FACTORY MANAGEMENT, ETC.

Modern Machine Shop Construction, Equipment and Management. By O. E. PERRIGO, M.E.

The only work published that describes the modern machine shop or manufacturing plant from the time the grass is growing on the site intended for it until the finished product is shipped. By a careful study of its thirty-two chapters the practical man may economically build, efficiently equip, and successfully manage the modern machine shop or manufacturing establishment. Just the book needed by those contemplating the erection of modern shop buildings, the rebuilding and reorganization of old ones, or the introduction of modern shop methods, time and cost systems. It is a book written and illustrated by a practical shop man for practical shop men who are too busy to read *theories* and want *facts*. It is the most complete all-around book of its kind ever published. It is a practical book for practical men, from the apprentice in the shop to the president in the office. It minutely describes and illustrates the most simple and yet the most efficient time and cost system yet devised. 2nd Revised and Enlarged Edition, just issued. 384 pages, 219 illustrations. Price . . . **$5.00**

FUEL

Combustion of Coal and the Prevention of Smoke. By WM. M. BARR.

This book has been prepared with special reference to the generation of heat by the combustion of the common fuels found in the United States, and deals particularly with the conditions necessary to the economic and smokeless combustion of bituminous coals in Stationary and Locomotive Steam Boilers.

The presentation of this important subject is systematic and progressive. The arrangement of the book is in a series of practical questions to which are appended accurate answers, which describe in language, free from technicalities, the several processes involved in the furnace combustion of American fuels; it clearly states the essential requisites for perfect combustion, and points out the best methods for furnace construction for obtaining the greatest quantity of heat from any given quality of coal. Nearly 350 pages, fully illustrated. Price . . **$1.00**

Smoke Prevention and Fuel Economy. By BOOTH and KERSHAW.

A complete treatise for all interested in smoke prevention and combustion, being based on the German work of Ernst Schmatolla, but it is more than a mere translation of the German treatise, much being added. The authors show as briefly as possible the principles of fuel combustion, the methods which have been and are at present in use, as well as the proper scientific methods for obtaining all the energy in the coal and burning it without smoke. Considerable space is also given to the examination of the waste gases, and several of the representative English and American mechanical stoker and similar appliances are described. The losses carried away in the waste gases are thoroughly analyzed and discussed in the Appendix, and abstracts are also here given of various patents on combustion apparatus. The book is complete and contains much of value to all who have charge of large plants. 194 pages. Illustrated. Price **$2.50**

GAS ENGINES AND GAS

Gas, Gasoline and Oil Engines. By GARDNER D. HISCOX. Revised by VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

Just issued New 1918 Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Every user of a gas engine needs this book. Simple, instructive and right up-to-date. The only complete work on the subject. Tells all about internal combustion engineering, treating exhaustively on the design, construction and practical application of all forms of gas, gasoline, kerosene and crude petroleum-oil engines. Describes minutely all auxiliary systems, such as lubrication, carburetion and ignition. Considers the theory and management of all forms of explosive motors for stationary and marine work, automobiles, aeroplanes and motor-cycles. Includes also Producer Gas and Its Production. Invaluable instructions for all students, gas-engine owners, gas-engineers, patent experts, designers, mechanics, draftsmen and all having to do with the modern power. Illustrated by over 400 engravings, many specially made from engineering drawings, all in correct proportion. 650 pages, 435 engravings. Price . . . . **$2.50 net**

The Gasoline Engine on the Farm: Its Operation, Repair and Uses. By XENO W. PUTNAM.

This is a practical treatise on the Gasoline and Kerosene Engine intended for the man who wants to know just how to manage his engine and how to apply it to all kinds of farm work to the best advantage.

This book abounds with hints and helps for the farm and suggestions for the home and housewife. There is so much of value in this book that it is impossible to adequately describe it in such small space. Suffice to say that it is the kind of a book every farmer will appreciate and every farm home ought to have. Includes selecting the most suitable engine for farm work, its most convenient and efficient installation, with chapters on troubles, their remedies, and how to avoid them. The care and management of the farm tractor in plowing, harrowing, harvesting and road grading are fully covered; also plain directions are given for handling the tractor on the road. Special attention is given to relieving farm life of its drudgery by applying power to the disagreeable small tasks which must otherwise be done by hand. Many home-made contrivances for cutting wood, supplying kitchen, garden, and barn with water, loading, hauling and unloading hay, delivering grain to the bins or the feed trough are included; also full directions for making the engine milk the cows, churn, wash, sweep the house and clean the windows, etc. Very fully illustrated with drawings of working parts and cuts showing Stationary, Portable and Tractor Engines doing all kinds of farm work. All money-making farms utilize power. Learn how to utilize power by reading the pages of this book. It is an aid to the result getter, invaluable to the up-to-date farmer, student, blacksmith, implement dealer and, in fact, all who can apply practical knowledge of stationary gasoline engines or gas tractors to advantage. 530 pages. Nearly 180 engravings. Price **$2.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"Am much pleased with the book and find it to be very complete and up-to-date. I will heartily recommend it to students and farmers whom I think would stand in need of such a work, as I think it is an exceptionally good one."—*N. S, Gardiner*, Prof. in Charge, Clemson Agr. College of S. C.; Dept. of Agri. and Agri. Exp. Station, Clemson College, S. C.

"I feel that Mr. Putnam's book covers the main points which a farmer should know."—*R. T. Burdick*, Instructor in Agronomy, University of Vermont, Burlington, Vt.

Gasoline Engines: Their Operation, Use and Care. By A. HYATT VERRILL.

The simplest, latest and most comprehensive popular work published on Gasoline Engines, describing what the Gasoline Engine is; its construction and operation; how to install it; how to select it; how to use it and how to remedy troubles encountered. Intended for Owners, Operators and Users of Gasoline Motors of all kinds. This work fully describes and illustrates the various types of Gasoline Engines used in Motor Boats, Motor Vehicles and Stationary Work. The parts, accessories and appliances are described with chapters on ignition, fuel, lubrication, operation and engine troubles. Special attention is given to the care, operation and repair of motors, with useful hints and suggestions on emergency repairs and makeshifts. A complete glossary of technical terms and an alphabetically arranged table of troubles and their symptoms form most valuable and unique features of this manual. Nearly every illustration in the book is original, having been made by the author. Every page is full of interest and value. A book which you cannot afford to be without. 275 pages, 152 specially made engravings. Price **$1.50**

Gas Engine Construction, or How to Build a Half-horsepower Gas Engine. By PARSELL and WEED.

A practical treatise of 300 pages describing the theory and principles of the action of Gas Engines of various types and the design and construction of a half-horsepower Gas Engine, with illustrations of the work in actual progress, together with the dimensioned working drawings, giving clearly the sizes of the various details: for the student, the scientific investigator, and the amateur mechanic. This book treats of the subject more from the standpoint of practice than that of theory. The principles of operation of Gas Engines are clearly and simply described, and then the actual construction of a half-horsepower engine is taken up, step by step, showing in detail the making of the Gas Engine. 3rd Edition. 300 pages Price **$2.50**

How to Run and Install Two- and Four-Cycle Marine Gasoline Engines. By C. VON CULIN.

Revised and enlarged edition just issued. The object of this little book is to furnish a pocket instructor for the beginner, the busy man who uses an engine for pleasure or profit, but who does not have the time or inclination for a technical book, but simply to thoroughly understand how to properly operate, install and care for his own engine. The index refers to each trouble, remedy, and subject alphabetically. Being a quick reference to find the cause, remedy and prevention for troubles, and to become an expert with his own engine. Pocket size. Paper binding. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Modern Gas Engines and Producer Gas Plants. By R. E. MATHOT.

A guide for the gas engine designer, user, and engineer in the construction, selection, purchase, installation, operation, and maintenance of gas engines. More than one book on gas engines has been written, but not one has thus far even encroached on the field covered by this book. Above all, Mr. Mathot's work is a practical guide. Recognizing the need of a volume that would assist the gas engine user in understanding thoroughly the motor upon which he depends for power, the author has discussed his subject without the help of any mathematics and without elaborate theoretical explanations. Every part of the gas engine is described in detail, tersely, clearly, with a thorough understanding of the requirements of the mechanic. Helpful suggestions as to the purchase of an engine, its installation, care, and operation, form a most valuable feature of the work. 320 pages, 175 detailed illustrations. Price . . . **$2.50**

The Modern Gas Tractor. By VICTOR W. PAGÉ, M.E.

A complete treatise describing all types and sizes of gasoline, kerosene and oil tractors. Considers design and construction exhaustively, gives complete instructions for care, operation and repair, outlines all practical applications on the road and in the field. The best and latest work on farm tractors and tractor power plants. A work needed by farmers, students, blacksmiths, mechanics, salesmen, implement dealers, designers and engineers. 2nd Edition, Revised. 504 pages, 228 illustrations, 3 folding plates. Price **$2.00**

GEARING AND CAMS

Change Gear Devices. By OSCAR E. PERRIGO.

A practical book for every designer, draftsman, and mechanic interested in the invention and development of the devices for feed changes on the different machines requiring such mechanism. All the necessary information on this subject is taken up, analyzed, classified, sifted, and concentrated for the use of busy men who have not the time to go through the masses of irrelevant matter with which such a subject is usually encumbered and select such information as will be useful to them.

It shows just what has been done, how it has been done, when it was done, and who did it. It saves time in hunting up patent records and re-inventing old ideas. 88 pages. 3rd Edition. Price **$1.00**

Drafting of Cams. By LOUIS ROUILLION.

The laying out of cams is a serious problem unless you know how to go at it right. This puts you on the right road for practically any kind of cam you are likely to run up against. 3rd Edition. Price . . . . **25 cents**

Bevel Gear Tables. By D. AG. ENGSTROM.

A book that will at once commend itself to mechanics and draftsmen. Does away with all the trigonometry and fancy figuring on bevel gears, and makes it easy for anyone to lay them out or make them just right. There are 36 full-page tables that show every necessary dimension for all sizes or combinations you're apt to need. No puzzling, figuring or guessing. Gives placing distance, all the angles (including cutting angles), and the correct cutter to use. A copy of this prepares you for anything in the bevel-gear line. 3rd Edition. 66 pages. Price **$1.00**

HYDRAULICS

Hydraulic Engineering. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

A treatise on the properties, power, and resources of water for all purposes. Including the measurement of streams, the flow of water in pipes or conduits; the horsepower of falling water, turbine and impact water-wheels, wave motors, centrifugal, reciprocating and air-lift pumps. With 300 figures and diagrams and 36 practical tables. All who are interested in water-works development will find this book a useful one, because it is an entirely practical treatise upon a subject of present importance and cannot fail in having a far-reaching influence, and for this reason should have a place in the working library of every engineer. Among the subjects treated are: Historical Hydraulics; Properties of Water; Measurement of the Flow of Streams; Flow from Sub-surface Orifices and Nozzles; Flow of Water in Pipes; Siphons of Various Kinds; Dams and Great Storage Reservoirs; City and Town Water Supply; Wells and Their Reinforcement; Air-lift Methods of Raising Water; Artesian Wells; Irrigation of Arid Districts; Water Power; Water Wheels; Pumps and Pumping Machinery; Reciprocating Pumps; Hydraulic Power Transmission; Hydraulic Mining; Canals; Ditches; Conduits and Pipe Lines; Marine Hydraulics; Tidal and Sea Wave Power, etc. 320 pages. Price . . . **$4.00**

ICE AND REFRIGERATION

Pocketbook of Refrigeration and Ice Making. By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLOR.

This is one of the latest and most comprehensive reference books published on the subject of refrigeration and cold storage. It explains the properties and refrigerating effect of the different fluids in use, the management of refrigerating machinery and the construction and insulation of cold rooms with their required pipe surface for different degrees of cold; freezing mixtures and non-freezing brines, temperatures of cold rooms for all kinds of provisions, cold storage charges for all classes of goods, ice making and storage of ice, data and memoranda for constant reference by refrigerating engineers, with nearly one hundred tables containing valuable references to every fact and condition required in the installment and operation of a refrigerating plant. New edition just published. Price **$1.50**

INVENTIONS—PATENTS

Inventors' Manual: How to Make a Patent Pay.

This is a book designed as a guide to inventors in perfecting their inventions, taking out their patents and disposing of them. It is not in any sense a Patent Solicitor's Circular nor a Patent Broker's Advertisement. No advertisements of any description appear in the work. It is a book containing a quarter of a century's experience of a successful inventor, together with notes based upon the experience of many other inventors.

Among the subjects treated in this work are: How to Invent. How to Secure a Good Patent. Value of Good Invention. How to Exhibit an Invention. How to Interest Capital. How to Estimate the Value of a Patent. Value of Design Patents. Value of Foreign Patents. Value of Small Inventions. Advice on Selling Patents. Advice on the Formation of Stock Companies. Advice on the Formation of Limited Liability Companies. Advice on Disposing of Old Patents. Advice as to Patent Attorneys. Advice as to Selling Agents. Forms of Assignments. License and Contracts. State Laws Concerning Patent Rights. 1900 Census of the United States by Counts of Over 10,000 Population. Revised Edition. 120 pages. Price **$1.00**

KNOTS

Knots, Splices and Rope Work. By A. Hyatt Verrill.

This is a practical book giving complete and simple directions for making all the most useful and ornamental knots in common use, with chapters on Splicing, Pointing, Seizing, Serving, etc. This book is fully illustrated with 154 original engravings, which show how each knot, tie or splice is formed, and its appearance when finished. The book will be found of the greatest value to Campers, Yachtsmen, Travelers, Boy Scouts, in fact, to anyone having occasion to use or handle rope or knots for any purpose. The book is thoroughly reliable and practical, and is not only a guide, but a teacher. It is the standard work on the subject. Among the contents are: 1. Cordage, Kinds of Rope. Construction of Rope, Parts of Rope Cable and Bolt Rope. Strength of Rope, Weight of Rope. 2. Simple Knots and Bends. Terms Used in Handling Rope. Seizing Rope. 3. Ties and Hitches. 4. Noose, Loops and Mooring Knots. 5. Shortenings, Grommets and Salvages. 6. Lashings, Seizings and Splices. 7. Fancy Knots and Rope Work. 128 pages, 150 original engravings. 2nd Revised Edition. Price . . . . **75 cents**

LATHE WORK

Lathe Design, Construction, and Operation, with Practical Examples of Lathe Work. By Oscar E. Perrigo.

A new, revised edition, and the only complete American work on the subject, written by a man who knows not only how work ought to be done, but who also knows how to do it, and how to convey this knowledge to others. It is strictly up-to-date in its descriptions and illustrations. Lathe history and the relations of the lathe to manufacturing are given; also a description of the various devices for feeds and thread-cutting mechanisms from early efforts in this direction to the present time. Lathe design is thoroughly discussed, including back gearing, driving cones, thread-cutting gears, and all the essential elements of the modern lathe. The classification of lathes is taken up, giving the essential differences of the several types of lathes including, as is usually understood, engine lathes, bench lathes, speed lathes, forge lathes, gap lathes, pulley lathes, forming lathes, multiple-spindle lathes, rapid-reduction lathes, precision lathes, turret lathes, special lathes, electrically driven lathes, etc. In addition to the complete exposition on construction and design, much practical matter on lathe installation, care and operation has been incorporated in the enlarged new edition. All kinds of lathe attachments for drilling, milling, etc., are described and complete instructions are given to enable the novice machinist to grasp the art of lathe operation as well as the principles involved in design. A number of difficult machining operations are described at length and illustrated. The new edition has nearly 500 pages and 350 illustrations. Price **$2.50**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"This is a lathe book from beginning to end, and is just the kind of a book which one delights to consult—a masterly treatment of the subject in hand."—*Engineering News.*

"This work will be of exceptional interest to any one who is interested in lathe practice, as one very seldom sees such a complete treatise on a subject as this is on the lathe."—*Canadian Machinery.*

Practical Metal Turning. By Joseph G. Horner.

A work of 404 pages, fully illustrated, covering in a comprehensive manner the modern practice of machining metal parts in the lathe, including the regular engine lathe, its essential design, its uses, its tools, its attachments, and the manner of holding the work and performing the operations. The modernized engine lathe, its methods, tools and great range of accurate work. The turret lathe, its tools, accessories and methods of performing its functions. Chapters on special work, grinding, tool holders, speeds, feeds, modern tool steels, etc. Second edition **$3.50**

Turning and Boring Tapers. By Fred H. Colvin.

There are two ways to turn tapers; the right way and one other. This treatise has to do with the right way; it tells you how to start the work properly, how to set the lathe, what tools to use and how to use them, and forty and one other little things that you should know. Fourth edition . . . . **25 cents**

LIQUID AIR

luid Air and the Liquefaction of Gases. By T. O'Conor Sloane.

This book gives the history of the theory, discovery and manufacture of Liquid Air, and contains an illustrated description of all the experiments that have excited the wonder of audiences all over the country. It shows how liquid air, like water, is carried hundreds of miles and is handled in open buckets. It tells what may be expected from it in the near future.
A book that renders simple one of the most perplexing chemical problems of the century. Startling developments illustrated by actual experiments.
It is not only a work of scientific interest and authority, but is intended for the general reader, being written in a popular style—easily understood by every one. Second edition. 365 pages. Price $2.00

LOCOMOTIVE ENGINEERING

r-Brake Catechism. By Robert H. Blackall.

This book is a standard text-book. It covers the Westinghouse Air-Brake Equipment, including the No. 5 and the No. 6 E.-T. Locomotive Brake Equipment; the K (Quick Service) Triple Valve for Freight Service; and the Cross-Compound Pump. The operation of all parts of the apparatus is explained in detail, and a practical way of finding their peculiarities and defects, with a proper remedy, is given. It contains 2,000 questions with their answers, which will enable any railroad man to pass any examination on the subject of Air Brakes. Endorsed and used by air-brake instructors and examiners on nearly every railroad in the United States. Twenty-sixth edition. 411 pages, fully illustrated with colored plates and diagrams. Price $2.00

nerican Compound Locomotives. By Fred H. Colvin.

The only book on compounds for the engineman or shopman that shows in a plain, practical way the various features of compound locomotives in use. Shows how they are made, what to do when they break down or balk. Contains sections as follows: A Bit of History. Theory of Compounding Steam Cylinders. Baldwin Two-Cylinder Compound. Pittsburg Two-Cylinder Compound. Rhose Island Compound. Richmond Compound. Rogers Compound. Schenectady Two-Cylinder Compound. Vauclain Compound. Tandem Compounds. Baldwin Tandem. The Colvin-Wightman Tandem. Schenectady Tandem. Balanced Locomotives. Baldwin Balanced Compound. Plans for Balancing. Locating Blows. Breakdowns. Reducing Valves. Drifting. Valve Motion. Disconnecting. Power of Compound Locomotives. Practical Notes.
Fully illustrated and containing ten special "Duotone" inserts on heavy Plate Paper, showing different types of Compounds. 142 pages. Price $1.00

pplication of Highly Superheated Steam to Locomotives. By Robert Garbe.

A practical book which cannot be recommended too highly to those motive-power men who are anxious to maintain the highest efficiency in their locomotives. Contains special chapters on Generation of Highly Superheated Steam; Superheated Steam and the Two-Cylinder Simple Engine; Compounding and Superheating; Designs of Locomotive Superheaters; Constructive Details of Locomotives Using Highly Superheated Steam. Experimental and Working Results. Illustrated with folding plates and tables. Cloth. Price $2.50

ombustion of Coal and the Prevention of Smoke. By Wm. M. Barr.

This book has been prepared with special reference to the generation of heat by the combustion of the common fuels found in the United States and deals particularly with the conditions necessary to the economic and smokeless combustion of bituminous coal in Stationary and Locomotive Steam Boilers.
Presentation of this important subject is systematic and progressive. The arrangement of the book is in a series of practical questions to which are appended accurate answers, which describe in language free from technicalities the several processes involved in the furnace combustion of American fuels; it clearly states the essential requisites for perfect combustion, and points out the best methods of furnace construction for obtaining the greatest quantity of heat from any given quality of coal. Nearly 350 pages, fully illustrated. Price $1.00

Diary of a Round-House Foreman. By T. S. Reilly.

This is the greatest book of railroad experiences ever published. Containing a fund of information and suggestions along the line of handling men, organising, etc., that one cannot afford to miss. 176 pages. Price **$1.00**

Link Motions, Valves and Valve Setting. By Fred H. Colvin, Associate Editor of "American Machinist."

A handy book for the engineer or machinist that clears up the mysteries of valve setting. Shows the different valve gears in use, how they work, and why. Piston and slide valves of different types are illustrated and explained. A book that every railroad man in the motive-power department ought to have. Contains chapters on Locomotive Link Motion, Valve Movements, Setting Slide Valves, Analysis by Diagrams, Modern Practice, Slip of Block, Slice Valves, Piston Valves, Setting Piston Valves, Joy-Allen Valve Gear, Walschaert Valve Gear, Gooch Valve Gear, Alfree-Hubbell Valve Gear, etc., etc. Fully illustrated. Price . . . . **50 cents**

Locomotive Boiler Construction. By Frank A. Kleinhans.

The construction of boilers in general is treated and, following this, the locomotive boiler is taken up in the order in which its various parts go through the shop. Shows all types of boilers used; gives details of construction; practical facts, such as life of riveting, punches and dies; work done per day, allowance for bending and flanging sheets and other data. Including the recent Locomotive Boiler Inspection Laws and Examination Questions with their answers for Government Inspectors. Contains chapters on Laying-Out Work; Flanging and Forging; Punching; Shearing; Plate Planing; General Tables; Finishing Parts; Bending; Machinery Parts; Riveting; Boiler Details; Smoke-Box Details; Assembling and Calking; Boiler-Shop Machinery, etc., etc.

There isn't a man who has anything to do with boiler work, either new or repair work, who doesn't need this book. The manufacturer, superintendent, foreman and boiler worker—all need it. No matter what the type of bioler, you'll find a mint of information that you wouldn't be without. Over 400 pages, five large folding plates. Price **$3.00**

Locomotive Breakdowns and their Remedies. By Geo. L. Fowler. Revised by Wm. W. Wood, Air-Brake Instructor. Just issued. Revised pocket edition.

It is out of the question to try and tell you about every subject that is covered in this pocket edition of Locomotive Breakdowns. Just imagine all the common troubles that an engineer may expect to happen some time, and then add all of the unexpected ones, troubles that could occur, but that you have never thought about, and you will find that they are all treated with the very best methods of repair. Walschaert Locomotive Valve Gear Troubles, Electric Headlight Troubles, as well as Questions and Answers on the Air Brake are all included. 312 pages. 8th Revised Edition. Fully illustrated. Price **$1.00**

Locomotive Catechism. By Robert Grimshaw.

The revised edition of "Locomotive Catechism," by Robert Grimshaw, is a New Book from Cover to Cover. It contains twice as many pages and double the number of illustrations of previous editions. Includes the greatest amount of practical information ever published on the construction and management of modern locomotives. Specially Prepared Chapters on the Walschaert Locomotive Valve Gear, the Air-Brake Equipment and the Electric Headlight are given.

It commends itself at once to every Engineer and Fireman, and to all who are going in for examination or promotion. In plain language, with full, complete answers, not only all the questions asked by the examining engineer are given, but those which the young and less experienced would ask the veteran, and which old hands ask as "stickers." It is a veritable Encyclopedia of the Locomotive, is entirely free from mathematics, easily understood and thoroughly up to date. Contains over 4,000 Examination Questions with their Answers. 825 pages, 437 illustrations, and 3 folding plates. 28th Revised Edition. Price . . . **$2.50**

Practical Instructor and Reference Book for Locomotive Firemen and Engineers. By CHAS. F. LOCKHART.

An entirely new book on the Locomotive. It appeals to every railroad man, as it tells him how things are done and the right way to do them. Written by a man who has had years of practical experience in locomotive shops and on the road firing and running. The information given in this book cannot be found in any other similar treatise. Eight hundred and fifty-one questions with their answers are included, which will prove specially helpful to those preparing for examination. Practical information on: The Construction and Operation of Locomotives, Breakdowns and their Remedies, Air Brakes and Valve Gears. Rules and Signals are handled in a thorough manner. As a book of reference it cannot be excelled. The book is divided into six parts, as follows: 1. The Fireman's Duties. 2. General Description of the Locomotive. 3. Breakdowns and their Remedies. 4. Air Brakes. 5. Extracts from Standard Rules. 6. Questions for Examination. The 851 questions have been carefully selected and arranged. These cover the examinations required by the different railroads. 368 pages, 88 illustrations. Price **$1.50**

Prevention of Railroad Accidents, or Safety in Railroading. By GEORGE BRADSHAW.

This book is a heart-to-heart talk with Railroad Employees, dealing with facts, not theories, and showing the men in the ranks, from every-day experience, how accidents occur and how they may be avoided. The book is illustrated with seventy original photographs and drawings showing the safe and unsafe methods of work. No visionary schemes, no ideal pictures. Just Plain Facts and Practical Suggestions are given. Every railroad employee who reads the book is a better and safer man to have in railroad service. It gives just the information which will be the means of preventing many injuries and deaths. All railroad employees should procure a copy, read it, and do their part in preventing accidents. 169 pages. Pocket size. Fully illustrated. Price .... **50 cents**

Train Rule Examinations Made Easy. By G. E. COLLINGWOOD.

This is the only practical work on train rules in print. Every detail is covered, and puzzling points are explained in simple, comprehensive language, making it a practical treatise for the Train Dispatcher, Engineman, Trainman, and all others who have to do with the movements of trains. Contains complete and reliable information of the Standard Code of Train Rules for single track. Shows Signals in Colors, as used on the different roads. Explains fully the practical application of train orders, giving a clear and definite understanding of all orders which may be used. The meaning and necessity for certain rules are explained in such a manner that the student may know beyond a doubt the rights conferred under any orders he may receive or the action required by certain rules. As nearly all roads require trainmen to pass regular examinations, a complete set of examination questions, with their answers, are included. These will enable the student to pass the required examinations with credit to himself and the road for which he works. 2nd Edition, Revised. 256 pages, fully illustrated, with Train Signals in Colors. Price **$1.25**

The Walschaert and Other Modern Radial Valve Gears for Locomotives. By WM. W. WOOD.

If you would thoroughly understand the Walschaert Valve Gear you should possess a copy of this book, as the author takes the plainest form of a steam engine—a stationary engine in the rough, that will only turn its crank in one direction—and from it builds up, with the reader's help, a modern locomotive equipped with the Walschaert Valve Gear, complete. The points discussed are clearly illustrated: Two large folding plates that show the positions of the valves of both inside or outside admission type, as well as the links and other parts of the gear when the crank is at nine different points in its revolution, are especially valuable in making the movement clear. These employ sliding cardboard models which are contained in a pocket in the cover.

The book is divided into five general divisions, as follows: 1. Analysis of the gear. 2. Designing and erecting the gear. 3. Advantages of the gear. 4. Questions and answers relating to the Walschaert Valve Gear. 5. Setting valves with the Walschaert Valve Gear; the three primary types of locomotive valve motion; modern radial valve gears other than the Walschaert; the Hobart All-free Valve and Valve Gear, with questions and answers on breakdowns; the Baker-Pilliod Valve Gear; the Improved Baker-Pilliod Valve Gear, with questions and answers on breakdowns.

The questions with full answers given will be especially valuable to firemen and engineers in preparing for an examination for promotion. 245 pages. 3rd Revised Edition. Price **$1.50**

Westinghouse E-T Air-Brake Instruction Pocket Book. By WM. W. WOOD, Air-Brake Instructor.

Here is a book for the railroad man, and the man who aims to be one. It is without doubt the only complete work published on the Westinghouse E-T Locomotive Brake Equipment. Written by an Air-Brake Instructor who knows just what is needed. It covers the subject thoroughly. Everything about the New Westinghouse Engine and Tender Brake Equipment, including the standard No. 5 and the Perfected No. 6 style of brake, is treated in detail. Written in plain English and profusely illustrated with Colored Plates, which enable one to trace the flow of pressures throughout the entire equipment. The best book ever published on the Air Brake. Equally good for the beginner and the advanced engineer. Will pass any one through any examination. It informs and enlightens you on every point. Indispensable to every engineman and trainman.

Contains examination questions and answers on the E-T equipment. Covering what the E-T Brake is. How it should be operated. What to do when defective. Not a question can be asked of the engineman up for promotion, on either the No. 5 or the No. 6 E-T equipment, that is not asked and answered in the book. If you want to thoroughly understand the E-T equipment get a copy of this book. It covers every detail. Makes Air-Brake troubles and examinations easy. Price **$1.50**

MACHINE-SHOP PRACTICE

American Tool Making and Interchangeable Manufacturing. By J. V. WOODWORTH.

A "shoppy" book, containing no theorizing, no problematical or experimental devices. There are no badly proportioned and impossible diagrams, no catalogue cuts, but a valuable collection of drawings and descriptions of devices, the rich fruits of the author's own experience. In its 500-odd pages the one subject only, Tool Making, and whatever relates thereto, is dealt with. The work stands without a rival. It is a complete, practical treatise, on the art of American Tool Making and system of interchangeable manufacturing as carried on to-day in the United States. In it are described and illustrated all of the different types and classes of small tools, fixtures, devices, and special appliances which are in general use in all machine-manufacturing and metal-working establishments where economy, capacity, and interchangeability in the production of machined metal parts are imperative. The science of jig making is exhaustively discussed, and particular attention is paid to drill jigs, boring, profiling and milling fixtures and other devices in which the parts to be machined are located and fastened within the contrivances. All of the tools, fixtures, and devices illustrated and described have been or are used for the actual production of work, such as parts of drill presses, lathes, patented machinery, typewriters, electrical apparatus, mechanical appliances, brass goods, composition parts, mould products, sheet-metal articles, drop-forgings, jewelry, watches, medals, coins, etc. 531 pages. Price **$4.00**

HENLEY'S ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL ENGINEERING AND ALLIED TRADES. EDITED by JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I., M.E.

This set of five volumes contains about 2,500 pages with thousands of illustrations, including diagrammatic and sectional drawings with full explanatory details. This work covers the entire practice of Civil and Mechanical Engineering. The best known experts in all branches of engineering have contributed to these volumes. The Cyclopedia is admirably well adapted to the needs of the beginner and the self-taught practical man, as well as the mechanical engineer, designer, draftsman, shop superintendent, foreman, and machinist. The work will be found a means of advancement to any progressive man. It is encyclopedic in scope, thorough and practical in its treatment on technical subjects, simple and clear in its descriptive matter, and without unnecessary technicalities or formulæ. The articles are as brief as may be and yet give a reasonably clear and explicit statement of the subject, and are written by men who have had ample practical experience in the matters of which they write. It tells you all you want to know about engineering and tells it so simply, so clearly, so concisely, that one cannot help but understand. As a work of reference it is without a peer. Complete set of five volumes, price **$25.00**

Threads and Thread Cutting. By COLVIN and STABEL.

This clears up many of the mysteries of thread-cutting, such as double and triple threads, internal threads, catching threads, use of hobs, etc. Contains a lot of useful hints and several tables. Third edition. Price .... **25 cents**

THE WHOLE FIELD OF MECHANICAL MOVEMENTS COVERED BY MR. HISCOX'S TWO BOOKS

We publish two books by Gardner D. Hiscox that will keep you from "inventing" things that have been done before, and suggest ways of doing things that you have not thought of before. Many a man spends time and money pondering over some mechanical problem, only to learn, after he has solved the problem, that the same thing has been accomplished and put in practice by others long before. Time and money spent in an effort to accomplish what has already been accomplished are time and money LOST. The whole field of mechanics, every known mechanical movement, and practically every device are covered by these two books. If the thing you want has been invented, it is illustrated in them. If it hasn't been invented, then you'll find in them the nearest things to what you want, some movements or devices that will apply in your case, perhaps; or which will give you a key from which to work. No book or set of books ever published is of more real value to the Inventor, Draftsman, or practical Mechanic than the two volumes described below.

Mechanical Movements, Powers, and Devices. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is a collection of 1,890 engravings of different mechanical motions and appliances, accompanied by appropriate text, making it a book of great value to the inventor, the draftsman, and to all readers with mechanical tastes. The book is divided into eighteen sections or chapters, in which the subject-matter is classified under the following heads: Mechanical Powers; Transmission of Power; Measurement of Power; Steam Power; Air Power Appliances; Electric Power and Construction; Navigation and Roads; Gearing; Motion and Devices; Controlling Motion; Horological; Mining; Mill and Factory Appliances; Construction and Devices; Drafting Devices; Miscellaneous Devices, etc. 15th Edition. 400 octavo pages. Price **$3.00**

Mechanical Appliances, Mechanical Movements and Novelties of Construction. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is a supplementary volume to the one upon mechanical movements. Unlike the first volume, which is more elementary in character, this volume contains illustrations and descriptions of many combinations of motions and of mechanical devices and appliances found in different lines of machinery, each device being shown by a line drawing with a description showing its working parts and the method of operation. From the multitude of devices described and illustrated might be mentioned, in passing, such items as conveyors and elevators, Pony brakes, thermometers, various types of boilers, solar engines, oil-fuel burners, condensers, evaporators, Corliss and other valve gears, governors, gas engines, water motors of various descriptions, air ships, motors and dynamos, automobile and motor bicycles, railway lock signals, car couplers, link and gear motions, ball bearings, breech-block mechanism for heavy guns, and a large accumulation of others of equal importance. One thousand specially made engravings. 396 octavo pages. Fourth edition. Price. **$3.00**

Machine-Shop Tools and Shop Practice. By W. H. VANDERVOORT.

A work of 555 pages and 673 illustrations, describing in every detail the construction, operation and manipulation of both hand and machine tools. Includes chapters on filing, fitting and scraping surfaces; on drills, reamers, taps and dies; the lathe and its tools: planers, shapers, and their tools; milling machines and cutters; gear cutters and gear cutting; drilling machines and drill work; grinding machines and their work; hardening and tempering; gearing, belting and transmission machinery; useful data and tables. Sixth edition. Price. **$3.00**

Machine-Shop Arithmetic. By COLVIN-CHENEY.

This is an arithmetic of the things you have to do with daily. It tells you plainly about: how to find areas in figures; how to find surface or volume of balls or spheres; handy ways for calculating; about compound gearing; cutting screw threads on any lathe; drilling for taps; speeds of drills; taps, emery wheels, grindstones, milling cutters, etc.; all about the Metric system with conversion tables; properties of metals; strength of bolts and nuts; decimal equivalent of an inch. All sorts of machine-shop figuring and 1,001 other things, any one of which ought to be worth more than the price of this book to you, as it saves you the trouble of bothering the boss. 6th Edition. 131 pages. Price . . . . **50 cents**

Modern Milling Machines: Their Design, Construction, and Operation. By JOSEPH G. HORNER.

This book describes and illustrates the Milling Machine and its work in such a plain, clear and forceful manner, and illustrates the subject so clearly and completely, that the up-to-date machinist, student or mechanical engineer cannot afford to do without the valuable information which it contains. It describes not only the early machines of this class, but notes their gradual development into the splendid machines of the present day, giving the design and construction of the various types, forms, and special features produced by prominent manufacturers, American and foreign. 304 pages, 300 illustrations. Cloth. Price... **$4.00**

"Shop Kinks." By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

A book of 400 pages and 222 illustrations, being entirely different from any other book on machine-shop practice. Departing from conventional style, the author avoids universal or common shop usage and limits his work to showing special ways of doing things better, more cheaply and more rapidly than usual. As a result the advanced methods of representative establishments of the world are placed at the disposal of the reader. This book shows the proprietor where large savings are possible, and how products may be improved. To the employee it holds out suggestions that, properly applied, will hasten his advancement. No shop can afford to be without it. It bristles with valuable wrinkles and helpful suggestions. It will benefit all, from apprentice to proprietor. Every machinist, at any age, should study its pages. Fifth edition. Price.. **$2.50**

The Modern Machinist. By JOHN T. USHER.

This is a book, showing by plain description and by profuse engravings made expressly for the work, all that is best, most advanced, and of the highest efficiency in modern machine-shop practice, tools and implements, showing the way by which and through which, as Mr. Maxim says, "American machinists have become and are the finest mechanics in the world." Indicating as it does, in every line, the familiarity of the author with every detail of daily experience in the shop, it cannot fail to be of service to any man practically connected with the shaping or finishing of metals.

There is nothing experimental or visionary about the book, all devices being in actual use and giving good results. It might be called a compendium of shop methods, showing a variety of special tools and appliances which will give new ideas to many mechanics, from the superintendent down to the man at the bench. It will be found a valuable addition to any machinist's library, and should be consulted whenever a new or difficult job is to be done, whether it is boring, milling, turning, or planing, as they are all treated in a practical manner. Fifth edition. 320 pages. 250 illustrations. Price..................... **$2.50**

Modern Machine-Shop Construction, Equipment and Management. By OSCAR E. PERRIGO.

The only work published that describes the Modern Shop or Manufacturing Plant from the time the grass is growing on the site intended for it until the finished product is shipped. Just the book needed by those contemplating the erection of modern shop buildings, the rebuilding and reorganization of old ones, or the introduction of Modern Shop Methods, time and cost systems. It is a book written and illustrated by a practical shop man for practical shop men who are too busy to read theories and want facts. It is the most complete all-round book of its kind ever published. Second Edition, Revised. 384 large quarto pages. 219 original and specially made illustrations. 2nd Revised and Enlarged Edition. Price **$5.00**

MANUAL TRAINING

Economics of Manual Training. By LOUIS ROUILLION.

The only book published that gives just the information needed by all interested in Manual Training, regarding Buildings, Equipment, and Supplies. Shows exactly what is needed for all grades of the work from the Kindergarten to the High and Normal School. Gives itemized lists of everything used in Manual Training Work and tells just what it ought to cost. Also shows where to buy supplies, etc. Contains 174 pages, and is fully illustrated. Second edition. Price.. **$1.50**

MARINE ENGINEERING

The Naval Architect's and Shipbuilder's Pocket Book of Formulæ, Rules, and Tables and Marine Engineer's and Surveyor's Handy Book of Reference. By CLEMENT MACKROW and LLOYD WOOLLARD.

The eleventh Revised and Enlarged Edition of this most comprehensive work has just been issued. It is absolutely indispensable to all engaged in the Shipbuilding Industry, as it condenses into a compact form all data and formulæ that are ordinarily required. The book is completely up to date, including among other subjects a section on Aeronautics. 750 pages, limp leather binding. Price .... **$5.00 net**

Marine Engines and Boilers: Their Design and Construction. By DR. G. BAUER, LESLIE S. ROBERTSON and S. BRYAN DONKIN.

In the words of Dr. Bauer, the present work owes its origin to an oft felt want of a condensed treatise embodying the theoretical and practical rules used in designing marine engines and boilers. The need of such a work has been felt by most engineers engaged in the construction and working of marine engines, not only by the younger men, but also by those of greater experience. The fact that the original German work was written by the chief engineer of the famous Vulcan Works, Stettin, is in itself a guarantee that this book is in all respects thoroughly up-to-date, and that it embodies all the information which is necessary for the design and construction of the highest types of marine engines and boilers. It may be said that the motive power which Dr. Bauer has placed in the fast German liners that have been turned out of late years from the Stettin Works represent the very best practice in marine engineering of the present day. The work is clearly written, thoroughly systematic, theoretically sound; while the character of the plans, drawings, tables, and statistics is without reproach. The illustrations are careful reproductions from actual working drawings, with some well-executed photographic views of completed engines and boilers. 744 pages, 550 illustrations and numerous tables. Cloth. Price .... **$9.00 net**

MINING

Ore Deposits, with a Chapter on Hints to Prospectors. By J. P. JOHNSON.

This book gives a condensed account of the ore deposits at present known in South Africa. It is also intended as a guide to the prospector. Only an elementary knowledge of geology and some mining experience are necessary in order to understand this work. With these qualifications, it will materially assist one in his search for metalliferous mineral occurrences and, so far as simple ores are concerned, should enable one to form some idea of the possibilities of any he may find. Illustrated. Cloth. Price **$2.00**

Practical Coal Mining. By T. H. COCKIN.

An important work, containing 428 pages and 213 illustrations, complete with practical details, which will intuitively impart to the reader not only a general knowledge of the principles of coal mining, but also considerable insight into allied subjects. The treatise is positively up-to-date in every instance, and should be in the hands of every colliery engineer, geologist, mine operator, superintendent, foreman, and all others who are interested in or connected with the industry. 3d Edition. Cloth. Price **$2.50**

Physics and Chemistry of Mining. By T. H. BYROM.

A practical work for the use of all preparing for examinations in mining or qualifying for colliery managers' certificates. The aim of the author in this excellent book is to place clearly before the reader useful and authoritative data which will render him valuable assistance in his studies. The only work of its kind published. The information incorporated in it will prove of the greatest practical utility to students, mining engineers, colliery managers, and all others who are specially interested in the present-day treatment of mining problems. 160 pages, illustrated. Price **$2.00**

PATTERN MAKING

Practical Pattern Making. By F. W. Barrows.

This book, now in its second edition, is a comprehensive and entirely practical treatise on the subject of pattern making, illustrating pattern work in both wood and metal, and with definite instructions on the use of plaster of paris in the trade. It gives specific and detailed descriptions of the materials used by pattern makers, and describes the tools, both those for the bench and the more interesting machine tools, having complete chapters on the Lathe, the Circular Saw, and the Band Saw. It gives many examples of pattern work, each one fully illustrated and explained with much detail. These examples, in their great variety, offer much that will be found of interest to all pattern makers, and especially to the younger ones, who are seeking information on the more advanced branches of their trade.

In this second edition of the work will be found much that is new, even to those who have long practised this exacting trade. In the description of patterns as adapted to the Moulding Machine many difficulties which have long prevented the rapid and economical production of castings are overcome; and this great, new branch of the trade is given much space. Stripping plate and stool plate work and the less expensive vibrator, or rapping plate work, are all explained in detail.

Plain, every-day rules for lessening the cost of patterns, with a complete system of cost keeping, a detailed method of marking, applicable to all branches of the trade, with complete information showing what the pattern is, its specific title, its cost, date of production, material of which it is made, the number of pieces and core-boxes, and its location in the pattern safe, all condensed into a most complete card record, with cross index.

The book closes with an original and practical method for the inventory and valuation of patterns. Containing nearly 350 pages and 170 illustrations. Price **$2.00**

PERFUMERY

Perfumes and Cosmetics: Their Preparation and Manufacture. By G. W. Askinson, Perfumer.

A comprehensive treatise, in which there has been nothing omitted that could be of value to the perfumer or manufacturer of toilet preparations. Complete directions for making handkerchief perfumes, smelling-salts, sachets, fumigating pastilles; preparations for the care of the skin, the mouth, the hair, cosmetics, hair dyes and other toilet articles are given, also a detailed description of aromatic substances; their nature, tests of purity, and wholesome manufacture, including a chapter on synthetic products, with formulas for their use. A book of general as well as professional interest, meeting the wants not only of the druggist and perfume manufacturer, but also of the general public. Among the contents are: 1. The History of Perfumery. 2. About Aromatic Substances in General. 3. Odors from the Vegetable Kingdom. 4. The Aromatic Vegetable Substances Employed in Perfumery. 5. The Animal Substances Used in Perfumery. 6. The Chemical Products Used in Perfumery. 7. The Extraction of Odors. 8. The Special Characteristics of Aromatic Substances. 9. The Adulteration of Essential Oils and Their Recognition. 10. Synthetic Products. 11. Table of Physical Properties of Aromatic Chemicals. 12. The Essences or Extracts Employed in Perfumery. 13. Directions for Making the Most Important Essences and Extracts. 14. The Division of Perfumery. 15. The Manufacture of Handkerchief Perfumes. 16. Formulas for Handkerchief Perfumes. 17. Ammoniacal and Acid Perfumes. 18. Dry Perfumes. 19. Formulas for Dry Perfumes. 20. The Perfumes Used for Fumigation. 21. Antiseptic and Therapeutic Value of Perfumes. 22. Classification of Odors. 23. Some Special Perfumery Products. 24. Hygiene and Cosmetic Perfumery. 25. Preparations for the Care of the Skin. 26. Manufacture of Casein. 27. Formulas for Emulsions. 28. Formulas for Cream. 29. Formulas for Meals, Pastes and Vegetable Milk. 30. Preparations Used for the Hair. 31. Formulas for Hair Tonics and Restorers. 32. Pomades and Hair Oils. 33. Formulas for the Manufacture of Pomades and Hair Oils. 34. Hair Dyes and Depilatories. 35. Wax Pomades, Bandolines and Brillientines. 36. Skin Cosmetics and Face Lotions. 37. Preparations for the Nails. 38. Water Softeners and Bath Salts. 39. Preparations for the Care of the Mouth. 40. The Colors Used in Perfumery. 41. The Utensils Used in the Toilet. Fourth edition, much enlarged and brought up to date. Nearly 400 pages, illustrated. Price. **$5.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"The most satisfactory work on the subject of Perfumery that we have ever seen."

"We feel safe in saying that here is a book on Perfumery that will not disappoint you, for it has practical and excellent formulæ that are within your ability to prepare readily."

"We recommend the volume as worthy of confidence, and say that no purchaser will be disappointed in securing from its pages good value for its cost, and a large dividend on the same, even if he should use but one per cent. of its working formulæ.—*Pharmaceutical Record*.

PLUMBING

Mechanical Drawing for Plumbers. By R. M. STARBUCK.

A concise, comprehensive and practical treatise on the subject of mechanical drawing in its various modern applications to the work of all who are in any way connected with the plumbing trade. Nothing will so help the plumber in estimating and in explaining work to customers and workmen as a knowledge of drawing, and to the workman it is of inestimable value if he is to rise above his position to positions of greater responsibility. Among the chapters contained are: 1. Value to plumber of knowledge of drawing; tools required and their use; common views needed in mechanical drawing. 2. Perspective versus mechanical drawing in showing plumbing construction. 3. Correct and incorrect methods in plumbing drawing; plan and elevation explained. 4. Floor and cellar plans and elevation; scale drawings; use of triangles. 5. Use of triangles; drawing of fittings, traps, etc. 6. Drawing plumbing elevations and fittings. 7. Instructions in drawing plumbing elevations. 8. The drawing of plumbing fixtures; scale drawings. 9. Drawings of fixtures and fittings. 10. Inking of drawings. 11. Shading of drawings. 12. Shading of drawings. 13. Sectional drawings; drawing of threads. 14. Plumbing elevations from architect's plan. 15. Elevations of separate parts of the plumbing system. 16. Elevations from the architect's plans. 17. Drawings of detail plumbing connections. 18. Architect's plans and plumbing elevations of residence. 19. Plumbing elevations of residence (*continued*); plumbing plans for cottage. 20. Plumbing elevations; roof connections. 21. Plans and plumbing elevations for six-flat building. 22. Drawing of various parts of the plumbing system; use of scales. 23. Use of architect's scales. 24. Special features in the illustrations of country plumbing. 25. Drawing of wrought-iron piping, valves, radiators, coils, etc. 26. Drawing of piping to illustrate heating systems. 150 illustrations. Price $1.50

Modern Plumbing Illustrated. By R. M. STARBUCK.

This book represents the highest standard of plumbing work. It has been adopted and used as a reference book by the United States Government in its sanitary work in Cuba, Porto Rico and the Philippines, and by the principal Boards of Health of the United States and Canada.

It gives connections, sizes and working data for all fixtures and groups of fixtures. It is helpful to the master plumber in demonstrating to his customers and in figuring work. It gives the mechanic and student quick and easy access to the best modern plumbing practice. Suggestions for estimating plumbing construction are contained in its pages. This book represents, in a word, the latest and best up-to-date practice and should be in the hands of every architect, sanitary engineer and plumber who wishes to keep himself up to the minute on this important feature of construction. Contains following chapters, each illustrated with a full-page plate: Kitchen sink, laundry tubs, vegetable wash sink; lavatories, pantry sinks, contents of marble slabs; bath tub, foot and sitz bath, shower bath; water closets. venting of water closets; low-down water closets, water closets operated by flush valves, water closet range; slop sink, urinals, the bidet; hotel and restaurant sink, grease trap; refrigerators, safe wastes, laundry waste, lines of refrigerators, bar sinks, soda fountain sinks; horse stall, frost-proof water closets; connections for S traps, venting; connections for drum traps; soil-pipe connections; supporting of soil pipe; main trap and fresh-air inlet; floor drains and cellar drains, subsoil drainage; water closets and floor connections; local venting; connections for bath rooms; connections for bath rooms, *continued;* examples of poor practice; roughing work ready for test; testing of plumbing systems; method of continuous venting; continuous venting for two-floor work; continuous venting for two lines of fixtures on three or more floors; continuous venting of water closets; plumbing for cottage house; construction for cellar piping; plumbing for residence, use of special fittings; plumbing for two-flat house; plumbing for apartment building, plumbing for double apartment building; plumbing for office building; plumbing for public toilet rooms; plumbing for public toilet rooms, *continued;* plumbing for bath establishment; plumbing for engine house, factory plumbing; automatic flushing for schools, factories, etc.; use of flushing valves; urinals for public toilet rooms; the Durham system. the destruction of pipes by electrolysis; construction of work without use of lead; automatic sewage lift; automatic sump tank; country plumbing; construction of cesspools; septic tank and automatic sewage siphon; water supply for country house; thawing of water mains and service by electricity; double boilers; hot water supply of large buildings; automatic control of hot-water tank; suggestions for estimating plumbing construction. 407 octavo pages, fully illustrated by 57 full-page engravings. Third, revised and enlarged edition, just issued. Price . . $4.00

Standard Practical Plumbing. By R. M. Starbuck.

A complete practical treatise of 450 pages, covering the subject of Modern Plumbing in all its branches, a large amount of space being devoted to a very complete and practical treatment of the subject of Hot Water Supply and Circulation and Range Boiler Work. Its thirty chapters include about every phase of the subject one can think of, making it an indispensable work to the master plumber, the journeyman plumber, and the apprentice plumber, containing chapters on: the plumber's tools; wiping solder; composition and use; joint wiping; lead work; traps; siphonage of traps; venting; continuous venting; house sewer and sewer connections; house drain; soil piping, roughing; main trap and fresh air inlet; floor, yard, cellar drains, rain leaders, etc.; fixture wastes; water closets; ventilation; improved plumbing connections; residence plumbing; plumbing for hotels, schools, factories, stables, etc.; modern country plumbing; filtration of sewage and water supply; hot and cold supply; range boilers; circulation; circulating pipes; range boiler problems; hot water for large buildings; water lift and its use; multiple connections for hot water boilers; heating of radiation by supply system; theory for the plumber; drawing for the plumber. Fully illustrated by 347 engravings. Price **$3.00**

RECIPE BOOK

Henley's Twentieth Century Book of Recipes, Formulas and Processes. Edited by Gardner D. Hiscox.

The most valuable Techno-chemical Formula Book published, including over 10,000 selected scientific, chemical, technological, and practical recipes and processes.

This is the most complete Book of Formulas ever published, giving thousands of recipes for the manufacture of valuable articles for everyday use. Hints, Helps, Practical Ideas, and Secret Processes are revealed within its pages. It covers every branch of the useful arts and tells thousands of ways of making money, and is just the book everyone should have at his command.

Modern in its treatment of every subject that properly falls within its scope, the book may truthfully be said to present the very latest formulas to be found in the arts and industries, and to retain those processes which long experience has proven worthy of a permanent record. To present here even a limited number of the subjects which find a place in this valuable work would be difficult. Suffice to say that in its pages will be found matter of intense interest and immeasurably practical value to the scientific amateur and to him who wishes to obtain a knowledge of the many processes used in the arts, trades and manufacture, a knowledge which will render his pursuits more instructive and remunerative. Serving as a reference book to the small and large manufacturer and supplying intelligent seekers with the information necessary to conduct a process, the work will be found of inestimable worth to the Metallurgist, the Photographer, the Perfumer, the Painter, the Manufacturer of Glues, Pastes, Cements, and Mucilages, the Compounder of Alloys, the Cook, the Physician, the Druggist, the Electrician, the Brewer, the Engineer, the Foundryman, the Machinist, the Potter, the Tanner, the Confectioner, the Chiropodist, the Manicurist, the Manufacturer of Chemical Novelties and Toilet Preparations, the Dyer, the Electroplater, the Enameler, the Engraver, the Provisioner, the Glass Worker, the Goldbeater, the Watchmaker, the Jeweler, the Hat Maker, the Ink Manufacturer, the Optician, the Farmer, the Dairyman, the Paper Maker, the Wood and Metal Worker, the Chandler and Soap Maker, the Veterinary Surgeon, and the Technologist in general.

A mine of information, and up-to-date in every respect. A book which will prove of value to EVERYONE, as it covers every branch of the Useful Arts. Every home needs this book; every office, every factory, every store, every public and private enterprise—EVERYWHERE—should have a copy. 800 pages. Price **$3.00**

WHAT IS SAID OF THIS BOOK:

"Your Twentieth Century Book of Recipes, Formulas, and Processes duly received. I am glad to have a copy of it, and if I could not replace it, money couldn't buy it. It is the best thing of the sort I ever saw." (Signed) M. E. Trux, Sparta, Wis.

"There are few persons who would not be able to find in the book some single formula that would repay several times the cost of the book."—*Merchants' Record and Show Window.*

"I purchased your book, 'Henley's Twentieth Century Book of Recipes, Formulas and Processes,' about a year ago and it is worth its weight in *gold.*"—Wm. H. Murray, Bennington, Vt.

"ONE OF THE WORLD'S MOST USEFUL BOOKS"

"Some time ago I got one of your 'Twentieth Century Books of Formulas,' and have made my living from it ever since. I am alone since my husband's death with two small children to care for and am trying so hard to support them. I have customers who take from me Toilet Articles I put up, following directions given in the book, and I have found everyone of them to be fine."—Mrs. J. H. McMaken, West Toledo, Ohio.

RUBBER

Rubber Hand Stamps and the Manipulation of India Rubber. By T. O'Conor Sloane.

This book gives full details on all points, treating in a concise and simple manner the elements of nearly everything it is necessary to understand for a commencement in any branch of the India Rubber Manufacture. The making of all kinds of Rubber Hand Stamps, Small Articles of India Rubber, U. S. Government Composition, Dating Hand Stamps, the Manipulation of Sheet Rubber, Toy Balloons, India Rubber Solutions, Cements, Blackings, Renovating, Varnish, and Treatment for India Rubber Shoes, etc.; the Hektograph Stamp Inks, and Miscellaneous Notes, with a Short Account of the Discovery, Collection and Manufacture of India Rubber, are set forth in a manner designed to be readily understood, the explanations being plain and simple. Including a chapter on Rubber Tire Making and Vulcanizing; also a chapter on the uses of rubber in Surgery and Dentistry. 3rd Revised and Enlarged Edition. 175 pages. Illustrated **$1.00**

SAWS

Saw Filing and Management of Saws. By Robert Grimshaw.

A practical hand-book on filing, gumming, swaging, hammering, and the brazing of band saws, the speed, work, and power to run circular saws, etc. A handy book for those who have charge of saws, or for those mechanics who do their own filing, as it deals with the proper shape and pitches of saw teeth of all kinds and gives many useful hints and rules for gumming, setting, and filing, and is a practical aid to those who use saws for any purpose. Complete tables of proper shape, pitch, and saw teeth as well as sizes and number of teeth of various saws are included. 3rd Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. Price. **$1.00**

STEAM ENGINEERING

American Stationary Engineering. By W. E. Crane.

This book begins at the boiler room and takes in the whole power plant. A plain talk on every-day work about engines, boilers, and their accessories. It is not intended to be scientific or mathematical. All formulas are in simple form so that any one understanding plain arithmetic can readily understand any of them. The author has made this the most practical book in print; has given the results of his years of experience, and has included about all that has to do with an engine room or a power plant. You are not left to guess at a single point. You are shown clearly what to expect under the various conditions; how to secure the best results; ways of preventing "shut downs" and repairs; in short, all that goes to make up the requirements of a good engineer, capable of taking charge of a plant. It's plain enough for practical men and yet of value to those high in the profession.

A partial list of contents is: The boiler room, cleaning boilers, firing, feeding; pumps, inspection and repair; chimneys, sizes and cost; piping; mason work; foundations; testing cement; pile driving; engines, slow and high speed; valves; valve setting; Corliss engines, setting valves, single and double eccentric; air pumps and condensers; different types of condensers; water needed; lining up; pounds; pins not square in crosshead or crank; engineers' tools; pistons and piston rings; bearing metal; hardened copper; drip pipes from cylinder jacket; belts, how made, care of; oils; greases; testing lubricants; rules and tables, including steam tables; areas of segments; squares and square roots; cubes and cube root; areas and circumferences of circles. Notes on: Brick work; explosions; pumps; pump valves; heaters, economizers; safety valves; lap, lead, and clearance. Has a complete examination for a license, etc., etc. 3rd Edition. 345 pages, illustrated. Price **$2.00**

Horsepower Chart.

Shows the horsepower of any stationary engine without calculation. No matter what the cylinder diameter of stroke, the steam pressure of cut-off, the revolutions, or whether condensing or non-condensing, it's all there. Easy to use, accurate, and saves time and calculations. Especially useful to engineers and designers. Price . . . . . **50 cents**

Modern Steam Engineering in Theory and Practice. By GARDNER D. HISCOX.

This is a complete and practical work issued for Stationary Engineers and Firemen, dealing with the care and management of boilers, engines, pumps, superheated steam, refrigerating machinery, dynamos, motors, elevators, air compressors, and all other branches with which the modern engineer must be familiar. Nearly 200 questions with their answers on steam and electrical engineering, likely to be asked by the Examining Board, are included.

Among the chapters are: Historical: steam and its properties; appliances for the generation of steam; types of boilers; chimney and its work; heat economy of the feed water; steam pumps and their work; incrustation and its work; steam above atmospheric pressure; flow of steam from nozzles; superheated steam and its work; adiabatic expansion of steam; indicator and its work; steam engine proportions; slide valve engines and valve motion; Corliss engine and its valve gear; compound engine and its theory; triple and multiple expansion engine; steam turbine; refrigeration; elevators and their management; cost of power; steam engine troubles; electric power and electric plants. 487 pages, 405 engravings. 3rd Edition. Price **$3.00**

Steam Engine Catechism. By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

This unique volume of 413 pages is not only a catechism on the question and answer principle but it contains formulas and worked-out answers for all the Steam problems that appertain to operation and management of the Steam Engine. Illustrations of various valves and valve gear with their principles of operation are given. Thirty-four Tables that are indispensable to every engineer and fireman that wishes to be progressive and is ambitious to become master of his calling are within its pages. It is a most valuable instructor in the service of Steam Engineering. Leading engineers have recommended it as a valuable educator for the beginner as well as a reference book for the engineer. It is thoroughly indexed for every detail. Every essential question on the Steam Engine with its answer is contained in this valuable work. 16th Edition. Price **$2.00**

Steam Engineer's Arithmetic. By COLVIN-CHENEY.

A practical pocket-book for the steam engineer. Shows how to work the problems of the engine room and shows "why." Tells how to figure horsepower of engines and boilers; area of boilers; has tables of areas and circumferences; steam tables; has a dictionary of engineering terms. Puts you on to all of the little kinks in figuring whatever there is to figure around a power plant. Tells you about the heat unit; absolute zero; adiabatic expansion; duty of engines; factor of safety; and a thousand and one other things; and everything is plain and simple—not the hardest way to figure, but the easiest. 2nd Edition. Price . . **50 cents**

Engine Tests and Boiler Efficiencies. By J. BUCHETTI.

This work fully describes and illustrates the method of testing the power of steam engines, turbines and explosive motors. The properties of steam and the evaporative power of fuels. Combustion of fuel and chimney draft; with formulas explained or practically computed. 255 pages, 179 illustrations. Price **$3.00**

Engine Runner's Catechism. By ROBERT GRIMSHAW.

A practical treatise for the stationary engineer, telling how to erect, adjust, and run the principal steam engines in use in the United States. Describing the principal features of various special and well-known makes of engines: Temper Cut-off, Shipping and Receiving Foundations, Erecting and Starting, Valve Setting, Care and Use, Emergencies, Erecting and Adjusting Special Engines.

The questions asked throughout the catechism are plain and to the point, and the answers are given in such simple language as to be readily understood by anyone. All the instructions given are complete and up-to-date; and they are written in a popular style, without any technicalities or mathematical formulæ. The work is of a handy size for the pocket, clearly and well printed, nicely bound, and profusely illustrated.

To young engineers this catechism will be of great value, especially to those who may be preparing to go forward to be examined for certificates of competency; and to engineers generally it will be of no little service, as they will find in this volume more really practical and useful information than is to be found anywhere else within a like compass. 387 pages. 7th Edition. Price **$2.00**

STEAM HEATING AND VENTILATION

Practical Steam, Hot-Water Heating and Ventilation. By A. G. King.

This book is the standard and latest work published on the subject and has been prepared for the use of all engaged in the business of steam, hot-water heating, and ventilation. It is an original and exhaustive work. Tells how to get heating contracts, how to install heating and ventilating apparatus, the best business methods to be used, with "Tricks of the Trade" for shop use. Rules and data for estimating radiation and cost and such tables and information as make it an indispensable work for everyone interested in steam, hot-water heating, and ventilation. It describes all the principal systems of steam, hot-water, vacuum, vapor, and vacuum-vapor heating, together with the new accelerated systems of hot-water circulation, including chapters on up-to-date methods of ventilation and the fan or blower system of heating and ventilation. Containing chapters on: I. Introduction. II. Heat. III. Evolution of artificial heating apparatus. IV. Boiler surface and settings. V. The chimney flue. VI. Pipe and fittings. VII. Valves, various kinds. VIII. Forms of radiating surfaces. IX. Locating of radiating surfaces. X. Estimating radiation. XI. Steam-heating apparatus. XII. Exhaust-steam heating. XIII. Hot-water heating. XIV. Pressure systems of hot-water work. XV. Hot-water appliances. XVI. Greenhouse heating. XVII. Vacuum vapor and vacuum exhaust heating. XVIII. Miscellaneous heating. XIX. Radiator and pipe connections. XX. Ventilation. XXI. Mechanical ventilation and hot-blast heating. XXII. Steam appliances. XXIII. District heating. XXIV. Pipe and boiler covering. XXV. Temperature regulation and heat control. XXVI. Business methods. XXVII. Miscellaneous. XXVIII. Rules, tables, and useful information. 367 pages, 300 detailed engravings. 2nd Edition—Revised. Price **$3.00**

Five Hundred Plain Answers to Direct Questions on Steam, Hot-Water, Vapor and Vacuum Heating Practice. By Alfred G. King.

This work, just off the press, is arranged in question and answer form; it is intended as a guide and text-book for the younger, inexperienced fitter and as a reference book for all fitters. This book tells "how" and also tells "why". No work of its kind has ever been published. It answers all the questions regarding each method or system that would be asked by the steam fitter or heating contractor, and may be used as a text or reference book, and for examination questions by Trade Schools or Steam Fitters' Associations. Rules, data, tables and descriptive methods are given, together with much other detailed information of daily practical use to those engaged in or interested in the various methods of heating. Valuable to those preparing for examinations. Answers every question asked relating to modern Steam, Hot-Water, Vapor and Vacuum Heating. Among the contents are: The Theory and Laws of Heat. Methods of Heating. Chimneys and Flues. Boilers for Heating. Boiler Trimmings and Settings. Radiation. Steam Heating. Boiler, Radiator and Pipe Connections for Steam Heating. Hot Water Heating. The Two-Pipe Gravity System of Hot Water Heating. The Circuit System of Hot Water Heating. The Overhead System of Hot Water Heating. Boiler, Radiator and Pipe Connections for Gravity Systems of Hot Water Heating. Accelerated Hot Water Heating. Expansion Tank Connections. Domestic Hot Water Heating. Valves and Air Valves. Vacuum Vapor and Vacuo-Vapor Heating. Mechanical Systems of Vacuum Heating. Non-Mechanical Vacuum Systems. Vapor Systems. Atmospheric and Modulating Systems. Heating Greenhouses. Information, Rules and Tables. 200 pages, 127 illustrations. Octavo. Cloth. Price **$1.50**

STEEL

Hardening, Tempering, Annealing, and Forging of Steel. By J. V. Woodworth.

A new work treating in a clear, concise manner all modern processes for the heating, annealing, forging, welding, hardening and tempering of steel, making it a book of great practical value to the metal-working mechanic in general, with special directions for the successful hardening and tempering of all steel tools used in the arts, including milling cutters, taps, thread dies, reamers, both solid and shell, hollow mills, punches and dies, and all kinds of sheet-metal working tools, shear blades, saws, fine cutlery, and metal-cutting tools of all description, as well as for all implements of steel both large and small. In this work the simplest and most satisfactory hardening and tempering processes are given.

The uses to which the leading brands of steel may be adapted are concisely presented, and their treatment for working under different conditions explained, also the special methods for the hardening and tempering of special brands.
A chapter devoted to the different processes for case-hardening is also included, and special reference made to the adaptation of machinery steel for tools of various kinds. Fourth edition. 288 pages. 201 illustrations. Price **$2.50**

Steel: Its Selection, Annealing, Hardening, and Tempering. By E. R. Markham.

This work was formerly known as "The American Steel Worker," but on the publication of the new, revised edition, the publishers deemed it advisable to change its title to a more suitable one. It is the standard work on Hardening, Tempering, and Annealing Steel of all kinds. This book tells how to select, and how to work, temper, harden, and anneal steel for everything on earth. It doesn't tell how to temper one class of tools and then leave the treatment of another kind of tool to your imagination and judgment, but it gives careful instructions for every detail of every tool, whether it be a tap, a reamer or just a screw-driver. It tells about the tempering of small watch springs, the hardening of cutlery, and the annealing of dies. In fact, there isn't a thing that a steel worker would want to know that isn't included. It is the standard book on selecting, hardening and tempering all grades of steel. Among the chapter headings might be mentioned the following subjects: Introduction; the workman; steel; methods of heating; heating tool steel; forging; annealing; hardening baths; baths for hardening; hardening steel; drawing the temper after hardening; examples of hardening; pack hardening; case hardening; spring tempering; making tools of machine steel; special steels; steel for various tools; causes of trouble; high-speed steels, etc. 400 pages. Very fully illustrated. Fourth edition. Price **$2.50**

TRACTORS

The Modern Gas Tractor. By Victor W. Pagé, M.E.

A complete treatise describing all types and sizes of gasoline, kerosene and oil tractors. Considers design and construction exhaustively, gives complete instructions for care, operation and repair, outlines all practical applications on the road and in the field. The best and latest work on farm tractors and tractor power plants. A work needed by farmers, students, blacksmiths, mechanics, salesmen, implement dealers, designers, and engineers. Second edition, revised and enlarged. 504 pages. Nearly 300 illustrations and folding plates. Price **$2.00**

TURBINES

Marine Steam Turbines. By Dr. G. Bauer and O. Lasche. Assisted by E. Ludwig and H. Vogel.

Translated from the German and edited by M. G. S. Swallow. The book is essentially practical and discusses turbines in which the full expansion of steam passes through a number of separate turbines arranged for driving two or more shafts, as in the Parsons system, and turbines in which the complete expansion of steam from inlet to exhaust pressure occurs in a turbine on one shaft, as in the case of the Curtis machines. It will enable a designer to carry out all the ordinary calculation necessary for the construction of steam turbines, hence it fills a want which is hardly met by larger and more theoretical works. Numerous tables, curves and diagrams will be found, which explain with remarkable lucidity the reason why turbine blades are designed as they are, the course which steam takes through turbines of various types, the thermodynamics of steam turbine calculation, the influence of vacuum on steam consumption of steam turbines, etc. In a word, the very information which a designer and builder of steam turbines most requires. Large octavo, 214 pages. Fully illustrated and containing eighteen tables, including an entropy chart. Price, net **$3.50**

WATCH MAKING

Watchmaker's Handbook. By CLAUDIUS SAUNIER.

No work issued can compare with this book for clearness and completeness. It contains 498 pages and is intended as a workshop companion for those engaged in watch-making and allied mechanical arts. Nearly 250 engravings and fourteen plates are included. This is the standard work on watch-making. Price **$3.00**

WELDING

Automobile Welding with the Oxy-Acetylene Flame. By M. KEITH DUNHAM.

Explains in a simple manner apparatus to be used, its care, and how to construct necessary shop equipment. Proceeds then to the actual welding of all automobile parts, in a manner understandable by every one. *Gives principles never to be forgotten.* Aluminum, cast iron, steel, copper, brass, bronze, and malleable iron are fully treated, as well as a clear explanation of the proper manner to burn the carbon out of the combustion head. This book is of utmost value, since the perplexing problems arising when metal is heated to a melting point are fully explained and the proper methods to overcome them shown. 167 pages, fully illustrated. Price **$1.00**